

**Nikon**

DIGITAL CAMERA

**D5000**
















---

User's Manual


En

# Where to Find It

Find what you're looking for from:

- |  |                              |   |   |
|--|------------------------------|---|---|
|                          | <b>The Table of Contents</b> |  |  vi–xi   |
| Find items by function or menu name.   |                              |   |   |
|                          | <b>The Q&amp;A Index</b>     |  |  ii–v    |
| Know what you want to do but don't know the function name? Find it from the "question and answer" index. |                              |   |   |
|                          | <b>The Index</b>             |  |  232–234 |
| Search by key word.  |                              |   |   |
|                          | <b>Error Messages</b>        |  |  221–223 |
| If a warning is displayed in the viewfinder or monitor, find the solution here.                          |                              |   |   |
|                          | <b>Troubleshooting</b>       |  |  216–220 |
| Camera behaving unexpectedly? Find the solution here.  |                              |   |   |

## **For Your Safety**


































Before using the camera for the first time, read the safety instructions in "For Your Safety" ( xii).

## **Help**

Use the camera's on-board help feature for help on menu items and other topics. See page 13 for details.

## **Digitutor**


"Digitutor", a series of "watch and learn" manuals in movie form, is available from the following website: [http://www.nikondigitutor.com/index\\_eng.html](http://www.nikondigitutor.com/index_eng.html)

<b>Q&amp;A Index</b>	 <b>ii</b>
<b>Table of Contents</b>	 <b>vi</b>
 <b>Introduction</b>	 <b>1</b>
 <b>Basic Photography and Playback</b>	 <b>27</b>
 <b>Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)</b>	 <b>41</b>
 <b>Recording and Viewing Movies</b>	 <b>49</b>
 <b>More on Photography (All Modes)</b>	 <b>53</b>
 <b>P, S, A, and M Modes</b>	 <b>79</b>
 <b>More on Playback</b>	 <b>115</b>
 <b>Connections</b>	 <b>131</b>
 <b>The Playback Menu</b>	 <b>146</b>
 <b>The Shooting Menu</b>	 <b>148</b>
 <b>Custom Settings</b>	 <b>153</b>
 <b>The Setup Menu</b>	 <b>165</b>
 <b>The Retouch Menu</b>	 <b>174</b>
 <b>Recent Settings /  My Menu</b>	 <b>190</b>
 <b>Technical Notes</b>	 <b>193</b>

## Q&A Index

Find what you're looking for using this "question and answer" index.

### ■ Camera Displays

Question	Key phrase	
<i>What do these icons mean?</i>	> The information display	8, 167
	> The viewfinder	6
<i>How many more shots can I take with this card?</i>	> Number of exposures remaining	29
<i>How much charge does the battery have left?</i>	> Battery level	28
<i>How do I keep the displays from turning off?</i>	> Auto off timers	157
<i>How do I display the menus in another language?</i>	> Language	169
<i>How do I adjust monitor brightness?</i>	> LCD brightness	166
<i>Can I display a framing grid in the viewfinder?</i>	> Grid display	158
<i>How do I view more information about a photo?</i>	> Photo information	117–121



## ■ Taking Photographs

Question	Key phrase	Page
<i>Is there a quick and easy way to take snapshots?</i>	> Auto modes	28–32
<i>How do I quickly adjust settings for different scenes?</i>	> Scene modes	33–38
<i>Can I frame photos in the monitor?</i>	> Live view	41–47
<i>Can I angle the monitor for easier framing?</i>		45
<i>Can I shoot movies?</i>	> Recording movies	50–51
<i>How do I take pictures for printing at large sizes?</i>		
<i>How can I get more pictures on the memory card?</i>	> Image quality and size	62–64
<i>Can I take pictures with a small file size for e-mail?</i>		
<i>Can I choose how the camera focuses?</i>	> Focus mode	54–55
<i>Can I choose the focus point?</i>	> Focus point	58
<i>Can I change the composition without refocusing?</i>	> 3D-tracking	57
<i>How do I focus on a subject that is not in a focus area?</i>	> Focus lock	58
<i>Can I set the flash to fire automatically when needed?</i>	> Auto flash	71–72
<i>How do I avoid “red-eye”?</i>	> Red-eye reduction	71–72
<i>How do I keep the flash from firing?</i>	> Auto (flash off) mode	30
	> Flash off	70–72
<i>How do I turn off the light on the front of the camera?</i>	> AF-assist illuminator	155
<i>How do I shoot a series of photos in quick succession?</i>	> Release mode	65–66
<i>Can I reduce camera noise in quiet surroundings?</i>		
<i>How do I take pictures with the self-timer?</i>	> Self-timer	67–69
<i>How do I use the optional remote control?</i>	> Remote control	
<i>What is exposure?</i>	> Exposure	80
<i>How do I “freeze” motion?</i>	> Mode S (shutter-priority auto)	82
<i>How do I suggest motion by blurring moving objects?</i>		
<i>Can I blur the background to bring out a subject?</i>	> Mode A (aperture-priority auto)	83
<i>Can I make photos brighter or darker?</i>	> Exposure compensation	90
<i>How do I create “light trails” behind moving objects?</i>	> Long time-exposures	86–87
<i>How do I preserve details in shadows and highlights?</i>	> Active D-Lighting	94–95
<i>Can I take photos at preset intervals?</i>	> Interval timer shooting	76–77
<i>How do I focus the viewfinder?</i>	> Viewfinder focus	25
<i>How do I keep the camera from beeping?</i>	> Beep	158

## ■ ■ Viewing, Retouching, and Printing Photographs

Question		Key phrase	📖
<i>How do I view photographs on the camera?</i>	>	Playback	39, 116
<i>How do I delete unwanted photos?</i>	>	Deleting photos	40, 126–128
<i>Can I zoom in on photos during playback?</i>	>	Playback zoom	124
<i>Can I protect photos from accidental deletion?</i>	>	Protect	125
<i>Can I view photos in an automatic slide show?</i>	>	Slide show	129
<i>Can I view photos on HD or standard TVs?</i>	>	Viewing on TV	132–133
<i>How do I copy photos to a computer?</i>	>	Computer	134–135
<i>How do I print photos?</i>	>	Printing	136–144
<i>Can I print the date of recording on my photos?</i>	>	Time stamp	138, 141
<i>How do I order professional prints?</i>	>	Print set (DPOF)	143
<i>Can I create retouched copies of photos?</i>	>	Retouch	174–189
<i>How do I remove “red-eye”?</i>	>	Red-eye correction	176
<i>Can I overlay two photos to make a single image?</i>	>	Image overlay	182–183
<i>How do I make JPEG copies of RAW (NEF) photos?</i>	>	NEF (RAW) processing	184
<i>Can I copy a photo to use as a base for a painting?</i>	>	Color outline	186
<i>Can I make stop-motion movies from my photos?</i>	>	Stop-motion movie	187–188

## ■ ■ *Menus and Settings*

Question	Key phrase	📖
<i>How do I use the menus?</i>	> Using the menus	13–15
<i>How do I get help for a menu or message?</i>	> Help	13
	> Error messages	221
	> The information display	8, 9
<i>How do I adjust settings?</i>	> The command dial	10–12
	> Menus	145–192
<i>How do I restore default settings?</i>	> Two-button reset	78
<i>How do I set the camera clock?</i>	> Time zone and date	20, 169
<i>How do I keep the file number from being reset when I insert a new memory card?</i>	> File number sequence	159
<i>How do I reset file numbering to 1?</i>		
<i>Is there a quick way to access frequently-used settings?</i>	> My Menu	191
<i>Is there a quick way to access recently-used settings?</i>	> Recent settings	190

## ■ ■ *Miscellaneous*

Question	Key phrase	📖
<i>What do I do with the eyepiece cap?</i>	> The DK-5 eyepiece cap	67, 77
<i>What memory cards can I use?</i>	> Approved memory cards	203
<i>What lenses can I use?</i>	> Compatible lenses	194
<i>What optional flash units (Speedlights) can I use?</i>	> Optional flash units	198
<i>What software is available for my camera?</i>		
<i>What other accessories are available for my camera?</i>	> Accessories	202
<i>How do I clean the camera?</i>	> Cleaning	205
<i>Who do I go to for servicing and repairs?</i>	> Servicing	205

# Table of Contents

Q&A Index .....	ii
For Your Safety .....	xii
Notices.....	xiv











## Introduction **1**

---

Overview .....	2
Getting to Know the Camera.....	3
The Camera Body .....	3
The Mode Dial.....	5
The Viewfinder.....	6
The Monitor .....	7
The Information Display.....	8
The Command Dial .....	10
The Power Switch .....	12
Camera Menus.....	13
Using Camera Menus .....	14
First Steps .....	16
Charge the Battery .....	16
Insert the Battery .....	17
Attach a Lens.....	18
Basic Setup.....	20
Insert a Memory Card.....	22
Format the Memory Card .....	23
Adjust Viewfinder Focus .....	25

## Basic Photography and Playback **27**

---

“Point-and-Shoot” Photography (AUTO and  Modes).....	28
Step 1: Turn the Camera On.....	28
Step 2: Select  or  Mode .....	30
Step 3: Frame the Photograph .....	30
Step 4: Focus .....	31
Step 5: Shoot .....	32
Creative Photography (Scene Modes) .....	33
 Portrait.....	34
 Landscape.....	34
 Child .....	34
 Sports .....	34
 Close Up .....	35
 Night Portrait.....	35
 Night Landscape .....	35

🎉 Party/Indoor .....	35
🏖️ Beach/Snow .....	36
🌅 Sunset .....	36
🌆 Dusk/Dawn .....	36
🐾 Pet Portrait .....	36
💡 Candlelight .....	37
🌸 Blossom .....	37
🍂 Autumn Colors .....	37
🍴 Food .....	37
👤 Silhouette .....	38
📷 High Key .....	38
📷 Low Key .....	38
Basic Playback .....	39
Deleting Unwanted Photographs .....	40

---

## **Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View) 41**

Framing Photographs in the Monitor .....	42
--	----

---

## **Recording and Viewing Movies 49**

Recording Movies .....	50
Viewing Movies .....	52

---

## **More on Photography (All Modes) 53**

Focus .....	54
Focus Mode .....	54
AF-Area Mode .....	56
Focus Point Selection .....	58
Focus Lock .....	58
Manual Focus .....	60
Image Quality and Size .....	62
Image Quality .....	62
Image Size .....	64
Release Mode .....	65
Self-Timer and Remote Modes .....	67
Using the Built-in Flash .....	70
Flash Mode .....	71
ISO Sensitivity .....	74
Interval Timer Photography .....	76
Two-Button Reset .....	78

---

Shutter Speed and Aperture .....	80
Mode <b>P</b> (Programmed Auto) .....	81
Mode <b>S</b> (Shutter-Priority Auto) .....	82
Mode <b>A</b> (Aperture-Priority Auto) .....	83
Mode <b>M</b> (Manual) .....	84
Exposure .....	88
Metering .....	88
Autoexposure Lock .....	89
Exposure Compensation .....	90
Flash Compensation .....	92
Active D-Lighting .....	94
White Balance .....	96
Fine-Tuning White Balance .....	98
Preset Manual .....	99
Bracketing .....	103
Picture Controls .....	106
Selecting a Picture Control .....	106
Modifying Existing Picture Controls .....	108
Creating Custom Picture Controls .....	111
Sharing Custom Picture Controls .....	113
The GP-1 GPS Unit .....	114

**More on Playback****115**

---

Full-Frame Playback .....	116
Photo Information .....	117
Thumbnail Playback .....	122
Calendar Playback .....	123
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom .....	124
Protecting Photographs from Deletion .....	125
Deleting Photographs .....	126
Full-Frame, Thumbnail, and Calendar Playback .....	126
The Playback Menu .....	127
Slide Shows .....	129

**Connections****131**

---








Viewing Photographs on TV .....	132
Standard Definition Devices .....	132
High-Definition Devices .....	133

Connecting to a Computer .....	134
Before Connecting the Camera .....	134
Connecting the Camera .....	135
Printing Photographs.....	136
Connecting the Printer .....	136
Printing Pictures One at a Time .....	137
Printing Multiple Pictures .....	139
Creating Index Prints .....	142
Creating a DPOF Print Order: Print Set.....	143

## Menu Guide

145

▶ The Playback Menu: <i>Managing Images</i> .....	146
Playback Folder .....	146
Display Mode .....	146
Image Review .....	147
Rotate Tall .....	147
📷 The Shooting Menu: <i>Shooting Options</i> .....	148
ISO Sensitivity Settings.....	149
Auto Distortion Control .....	150
Color Space.....	150
Long Exp. NR .....	151
High ISO NR .....	151
Active Folder .....	152
🔧 Custom Settings: <i>Fine-Tuning Camera Settings</i> .....	153
🔧: Reset Custom Settings .....	154
a: Autofocus .....	155
a1: AF-area Mode.....	155
a2: Built-in AF-assist Illuminator.....	155
a3: Live View Autofocus .....	155
a4: Rangefinder .....	156
b: Exposure.....	156
b1: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl .....	156
c: Timers/AE Lock.....	156
c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L .....	156
c2: Auto off Timers .....	157
c3: Self-Timer.....	157
c4: Remote on Duration .....	157
d: Shooting/Display.....	158
d1: Beep .....	158
d2: Viewfinder Grid Display .....	158
d3: ISO Display.....	158
d4: File Number Sequence.....	159
d5: Exposure Delay Mode.....	159
d6: Date Imprint.....	160

d7: Live View Display Options .....	161
e: Bracketing/Flash .....	162
e1: Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash .....	162
e2: Auto Bracketing Set .....	162
f: Controls .....	163
f1: Assign  /Fn Button .....	163
f2: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button .....	164
f3: Reverse Dial Rotation.....	164
f4: No Memory Card? .....	164
f5: Reverse Indicators.....	164
 The Setup Menu: <i>Camera Setup</i> .....	165
LCD Brightness.....	166
Info Display Format.....	166
Auto Information Display.....	168
Info Wrap-around .....	168
Video Mode.....	168
HDMI.....	168
Time Zone and Date .....	169
Language .....	169
Image Comment .....	169
Auto Image Rotation .....	170
Image Dust off Ref Photo .....	171
Eye-Fi Upload .....	173
Firmware Version .....	173
 The Retouch Menu: <i>Creating Retouched Copies</i> .....	174
Creating Retouched Copies .....	175
D-Lighting.....	176
Red-Eye Correction.....	176
Trim .....	177
Monochrome.....	178
Filter Effects.....	178
Color Balance.....	179
Small Picture .....	180
Image Overlay .....	182
NEF (RAW) Processing .....	184
Quick Retouch.....	185
Straighten .....	185
Distortion Control.....	185
Fisheye .....	185
Color Outline .....	186
Perspective Control.....	186
Stop-Motion Movie .....	187
Side-by-Side Comparison .....	189
 Recent Settings/  My Menu .....	190
 Recent Settings: Viewing Recent Settings.....	190
 My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu.....	191



Compatible Lenses.....	194
Compatible CPU Lenses .....	194
Compatible Non-CPU Lenses .....	195
Optional Flash Units (Speedlights).....	198
The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS) .....	198
Other Accessories .....	202
Approved Memory Cards.....	203
Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter .....	204
Caring for the Camera .....	205
Storage.....	205
Cleaning .....	205
The Low-Pass Filter.....	206
Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions .....	210
Available Settings .....	212
Memory Card Capacity .....	215
Exposure Program.....	216
Troubleshooting .....	217
Display .....	217
Shooting (All Modes).....	218
Shooting ( <b>P, S, A, M</b> ).....	219
Playback .....	220
Miscellaneous.....	220
Error Messages.....	221
Specifications .....	224
Battery Life .....	231
Index.....	232

# For Your Safety

To prevent damage to your Nikon product or injury to yourself or to others, read the following safety precautions in their entirety before using this equipment. Keep these safety instructions where all those who use the product will read them.

The consequences that could result from failure to observe the precautions listed in this section are indicated by the following symbol:



This icon marks warnings. To prevent possible injury, read all warnings before using this Nikon product.

## ■ ■ WARNINGS

### **Keep the sun out of the frame**

Keep the sun well out of the frame when shooting backlit subjects. Sunlight focused into the camera when the sun is in or close to the frame could cause a fire.

### **Do not look at the sun through the viewfinder**

Viewing the sun or other strong light source through the viewfinder could cause permanent visual impairment.

### **Using the viewfinder diopter control**

When operating the viewfinder diopter control with your eye to the viewfinder, care should be taken not to put your finger in your eye accidentally.

### **Turn off immediately in the event of malfunction**

Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the equipment or AC adapter (available separately), unplug the AC adapter and remove the battery immediately, taking care to avoid burns. Continued operation could result in injury. After removing the battery, take the equipment to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

### **Do not use in the presence of flammable gas**

Do not use electronic equipment in the presence of flammable gas, as this could result in explosion or fire.

### **Keep out of reach of children**

Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury.

### **Do not disassemble**

Touching the product's internal parts could result in injury. In the event of malfunction, the product should be repaired only by a qualified technician. Should the product break open as the result of a fall or other accident, remove the battery and/or AC adapter and then take the product to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

### **Do not place the strap around the neck of an infant or child**

Placing the camera strap around the neck of an infant or child could result in strangulation.

### **Observe caution when using the flash**

- Using the camera with the flash in close contact with the skin or other objects could cause burns.
- Using the flash close to the subject's eyes could cause temporary visual impairment. Particular care should be observed when photographing infants, when the flash should be no less than one meter (39 in.) from the subject.

### **Avoid contact with liquid crystal**

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent the liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.

**⚠ Observe proper precautions when handling batteries**

Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries for use in this product:

- Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
- Do not short or disassemble the battery.
- Be sure the product is off before replacing the battery. If you are using an AC adapter, be sure it is unplugged.
- Do not attempt to insert the battery upside down or backwards.
- Do not expose the battery to flame or to excessive heat.
- Do not immerse in or expose to water.
- Replace the terminal cover when transporting the battery. Do not transport or store the battery with metal objects such as necklaces or hairpins.
- Batteries are prone to leakage when fully discharged. To avoid damage to the product, be sure to remove the battery when no charge remains.
- When the battery is not in use, attach the terminal cover and store in a cool, dry place.
- The battery may be hot immediately after use or when the product has been used on battery power for an extended period. Before removing the battery turn the camera off and allow the battery to cool.
- Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the battery, such as discoloration or deformation.

**⚠ Observe proper precautions when handling the quick charger**

- Keep dry. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Dust on or near the metal parts of the plug should be removed with a dry cloth. Continued use could result in fire.
- Do not handle the power cable or go near the charger during thunderstorms. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.
- Do not damage, modify, or forcibly tug or bend the power cable. Do not place it under heavy objects or expose it to heat or flame. Should the insulation be damaged and the wires become exposed, take the power cable to a Nikon-authorized service representative for inspection. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not handle the plug or charger with wet hands. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.
- Do not use with travel converters or adapters designed to convert from one voltage to another or with DC-to-AC inverters. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the product or cause overheating or fire.

**⚠ Use appropriate cables**

When connecting cables to the input and output jacks, use only the cables provided or sold by Nikon for the purpose to maintain compliance with product regulations.

**⚠ CD-ROMs**

CD-ROMs containing software or manuals should not be played back on audio CD equipment. Playing CD-ROMs on an audio CD player could cause hearing loss or damage the equipment.

# Notices

- No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon's prior written permission.
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
- Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

## **Notices for Customers in the U.S.A.**

### **Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.



### **CAUTIONS**

#### *Modifications*

The FCC requires the user be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### *Interface Cables*

Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

### **Notice for Customers in the State of California**

**WARNING:** Handling the cord on this product may expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. *Wash hands after handling.*

Nikon Inc., 1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A.

Tel.: 631-547-4200

## Notices for Customers in Canada

### CAUTION

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

### Notice for Customers in Europe

This symbol indicates that this product is to be collected separately.



The following apply only to users in European countries:

- This product is designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.

### ATTENTION

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

This symbol on the battery indicates that the battery is to be collected separately.



The following apply only to users in European countries:

- All batteries, whether marked with this symbol or not, are designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.

## Disposing of Data Storage Devices

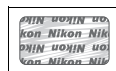
Please note that deleting images or formatting memory cards or other data storage devices does not completely erase the original image data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered from discarded storage devices using commercially available software, potentially resulting in the malicious use of personal image data. Ensuring the privacy of such data is the user's responsibility.

Before discarding a data storage device or transferring ownership to another person, erase all data using commercial deletion software, or format the device and then completely refill it with images containing no private information (for example, pictures of empty sky). Be sure to also replace any pictures selected for preset manual white balance (□ 99). Care should be taken to avoid injury when physically destroying data storage devices.

## Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories

Nikon cameras are designed to the highest standards and include complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including battery chargers, batteries, AC adapters, and flash accessories) certified by Nikon specifically for use with this Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.

The use of non-Nikon electronic accessories could damage the camera and may void your Nikon warranty. The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not bearing the Nikon holographic seal shown at right could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.



For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact a local authorized Nikon dealer.

## Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera, or other device may be punishable by law.

- **Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced**

Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped "Sample."

The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction of unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

- **Cautions on certain copies and reproductions**

The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company. Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

- **Comply with copyright notices**

The copying or reproduction of copyrighted creative works such as books, music, paintings, woodcuts, prints, maps, drawings, movies, and photographs is governed by national and international copyright laws. Do not use this product for the purpose of making illegal copies or to infringe copyright laws.

### **Before Taking Important Pictures**

Before taking pictures on important occasions (such as at weddings or before taking the camera on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

### **Life-Long Learning**

As part of Nikon's "Life-Long Learning" commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available on-line at the following sites:

- **For users in the U.S.A.:** <http://www.nikonusa.com/>
- **For users in Europe and Africa:** <http://www.europe-nikon.com/support>
- **For users in Asia, Oceania, and the Middle East:** <http://www.nikon-asia.com/>

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the following URL for contact information: <http://imaging.nikon.com/>



# Introduction

This chapter covers information you will need to know before using the camera, including the names of camera parts, how to use the camera menus, and how to ready the camera for use.



<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Getting to Know the Camera.....</b>	<b>3</b>
The Camera Body .....	3
The Mode Dial .....	5
The Viewfinder .....	6
The Monitor.....	7
The Information Display .....	8
The Command Dial.....	10
The Power Switch.....	12
<b>Camera Menus .....</b>	<b>13</b>
Using Camera Menus.....	14
<b>First Steps.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Charge the Battery .....	16
Insert the Battery .....	17
Attach a Lens .....	18
Basic Setup .....	20
Insert a Memory Card.....	22
Format the Memory Card.....	23
Adjust Viewfinder Focus.....	25

# Overview

Thank you for your purchase of a Nikon single-lens reflex (SLR) digital camera. To get the most from your camera, please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly and keep them where they will be read by all who use the product.

## ■ ■ **Symbols and Conventions**

To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:



This icon marks cautions; information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.



This icon marks notes; information that should be read before using the camera.



This icon marks references to other pages in this manual.

### **Use Only Nikon Brand Accessories**

Only Nikon brand accessories certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within its operational and safety requirements. **THE USE OF NON-NIKON ACCESSORIES COULD DAMAGE YOUR CAMERA AND MAY VOID YOUR NIKON WARRANTY.**

### **Servicing the Camera and Accessories**

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or a Nikon-authorized service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional flash units, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

### **Camera Settings**

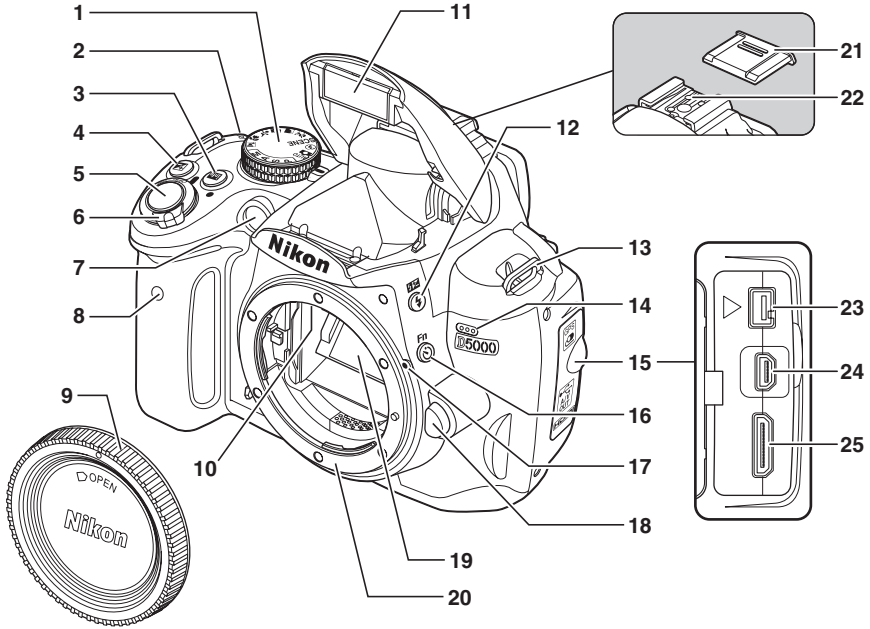
The explanations in this manual assume that default settings are used.



# Getting to Know the Camera

Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

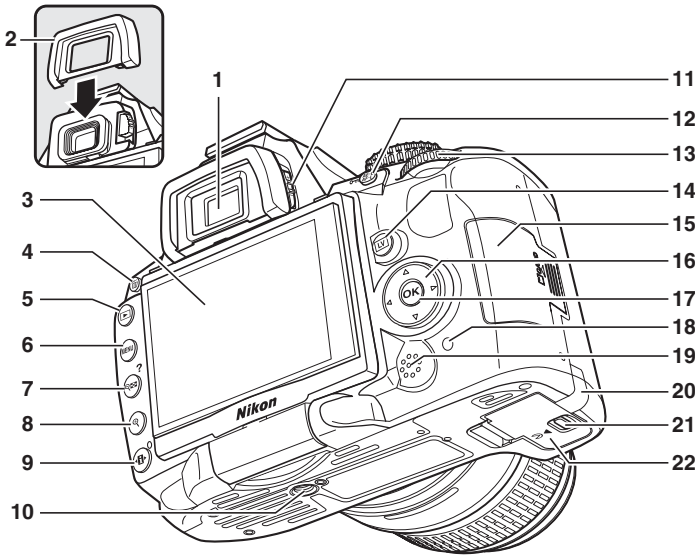
## The Camera Body



<b>1</b> Mode dial.....5	<b>8</b> Infrared receiver ..... 68	<b>18</b> Lens release button.....19
<b>2</b> Focal plane mark (→).....61	<b>9</b> Body cap	<b>19</b> Mirror.....42, 208
<b>3</b> <b>info</b> (information) button.....8	<b>10</b> CPU contacts	<b>20</b> Lens mount .....61
Two-button reset button.....78	<b>11</b> Built-in flash..... 70	<b>21</b> Accessory shoe cover..... 198
<b>4</b> <b>±</b> (exposure compensation) button .....90	<b>12</b> <b>⚡</b> (flash mode) button ..... 70	<b>22</b> Accessory shoe (for optional flash unit)..... 198
<b>@</b> (aperture) button .....84	<b>⚡</b> (flash compensation) button..... 93	<b>23</b> Accessory terminal ..... 203
Flash compensation button .....93	<b>13</b> Eyelet for camera strap	<b>24</b> USB connector
<b>5</b> Shutter-release button.....32	<b>14</b> Microphone ..... 51	Connecting to a computer ..... 135
<b>6</b> Power switch.....28	<b>15</b> Connector cover	Connecting to a printer.. 136
<b>7</b> AF-assist illuminator .....55	<b>16</b> <b>⌚</b> (self-timer) button ..... 69	A/V connector.....132
Self-timer lamp .....68	<b>Fn</b> (function) button .....163	<b>25</b> HDMI mini-pin connector
Red-eye reduction lamp .....72	<b>17</b> Mounting index.....18	..... 133



## The Camera Body (Continued)



<b>1</b> Viewfinder eyepiece..... 25	<b>7</b> (thumbnail/playback zoom out) button.....122	<b>14</b> (live view) button
<b>2</b> DK-24 rubber eyecup	<b>?</b> (help) button..... 13	Taking photographs..... 41
<b>3</b> Monitor	<b>8</b> (playback zoom in) button .....124	Shooting movies..... 49
Viewing settings .....8	<b>9</b> (information edit) button ..... 9	<b>15</b> Memory card slot cover..... 22
Live view ..... 41	Two-button reset button.....78	<b>16</b> Multi selector ..... 14
Viewing pictures ..... 39	<b>10</b> Tripod socket	<b>17</b> (OK) button..... 14
Full-frame playback..... 116	<b>11</b> Diopter adjustment control.....25	<b>18</b> Memory card access lamp
<b>4</b> (delete) button	<b>12</b> (AE-L/AF-L) button .....59, 164	.....22, 32
Deleting pictures ..... 40	<b>13</b> Command dial.....10	<b>19</b> Speaker
Deleting pictures during playback..... 126		<b>20</b> Power connector cover for optional power connector .....204
<b>5</b> (playback) button .. 39, 116		<b>21</b> Battery-chamber cover latch ..... 17
<b>6</b> MENU (menu) button .... 13, 145		<b>22</b> Battery-chamber cover..... 17

# The Mode Dial

The camera offers a choice of the following shooting modes:

## ■ ■ P, S, A, and M Modes

Select these modes for full control over camera settings.

**P—Programmed auto** (☐ 81): Camera chooses shutter speed and aperture, user controls other settings.

**S—Shutter-priority auto** (☐ 82): Choose fast shutter speeds to freeze action, slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects.

**A—Aperture-priority auto** (☐ 83): Adjust aperture to soften background details or increase depth-of-field to bring both main subject and background into focus.

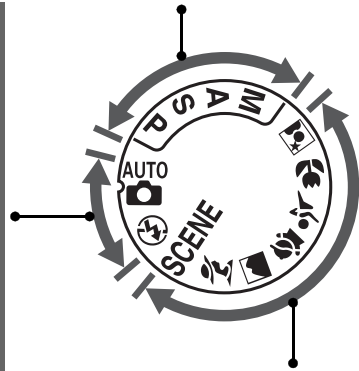
**M—Manual** (☐ 84): Match shutter speed and aperture to your creative intent.

## ■ ■ Auto Modes

Select these modes for simple, point-and-shoot photography.

**AUTO Auto** (☐ 28): Camera adjusts settings automatically to produce optimal results with “point-and-shoot” simplicity. Recommended for first-time users of digital cameras.

**Auto (flash off)** (☐ 28): As above, except that the flash will not fire even when lighting is poor.



## ■ ■ Scene Modes

Selecting a scene mode automatically optimizes settings to suit the selected scene.

**Portrait** (☐ 34): Shoot portraits with background in soft focus.

**Landscape** (☐ 34): Preserve details in landscape shots.

**Child** (☐ 34): Create portraits of children. Clothing and background details are vividly rendered while skin tones remain soft and natural.

**Sports** (☐ 34): Freeze motion for dynamic sports shots.

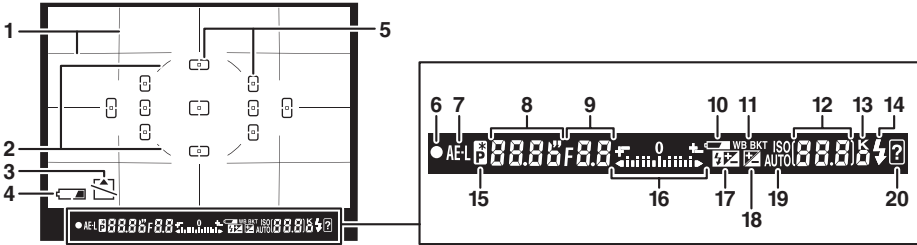
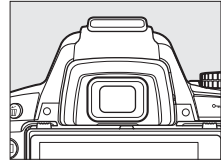
**Close up** (☐ 35): Take vivid close-ups of flowers, insects, and other small objects.

**Night portrait** (☐ 35): Shoot portraits against a dimly-lit backdrop.

**SCENE (other scenes; ☐ 33)**: Other scenes can be selected with the command dial.



# The Viewfinder



<p><b>1</b> Framing grid (displayed when <b>On</b> is selected for Custom Setting d2)..... 158</p> <p><b>2</b> Reference circle for center-weighted metering ..... 88</p> <p><b>3</b> “No memory card” indicator</p> <p><b>4</b> Battery indicator ..... 28</p> <p><b>5</b> Focus points ..... 58</p> <p><b>6</b> Focus indicator ..... 31, 61</p> <p><b>7</b> Autoexposure (AE) lock indicator ..... 89</p> <p><b>8</b> Shutter speed ..... 82, 84</p> <p><b>9</b> Aperture (f-number) ..... 83, 84</p> <p><b>10</b> Battery indicator ..... 28</p> <p><b>11</b> Bracketing indicator ..... 103</p>	<p><b>12</b> Number of exposures remaining ..... 29</p> <p>Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills ..... 66</p> <p>White balance recording indicator ..... 99</p> <p>Exposure compensation value ..... 90</p> <p>Flash compensation value ..... 92</p> <p>Capture mode indicator ..... 134</p> <p>ISO sensitivity ..... 74</p>	<p><b>13</b> “K” (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) ..... 29</p> <p><b>14</b> Flash-ready indicator ..... 32</p> <p><b>15</b> Flexible program indicator ..... 81</p> <p><b>16</b> Exposure indicator ..... 85</p> <p>Exposure compensation display ..... 90</p> <p><b>17</b> Flash compensation indicator ..... 92</p> <p><b>18</b> Exposure compensation indicator ..... 90</p> <p><b>19</b> Auto ISO sensitivity indicator ..... 149</p> <p><b>20</b> Warning indicator ..... 221</p>
--	---	---

## ✓ No Battery

When the battery is exhausted or no battery is inserted, the display in the viewfinder will dim. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction. The viewfinder display will return to normal when a fully-charged battery is inserted.

## ✓ The Viewfinder Display

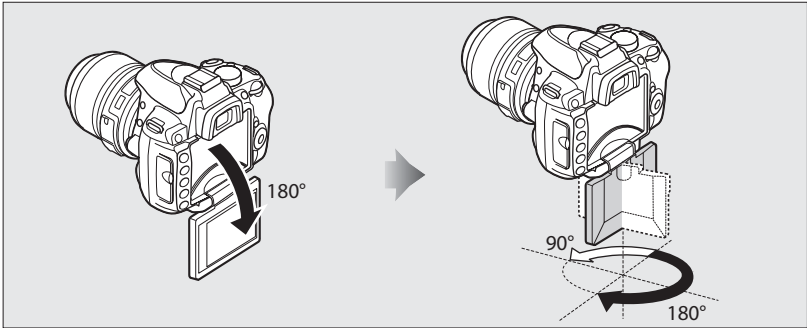
Owing to the characteristics of this type of viewfinder display, you may notice fine lines radiating outward from the selected focus point. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

## ✓ The Viewfinder

The response time and brightness of the viewfinder may vary with temperature.

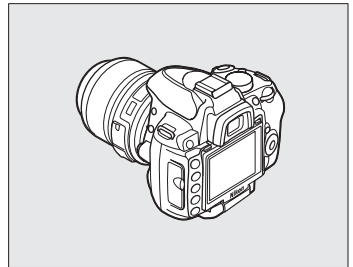
# The Monitor

The monitor opens outwards 180° and can be rotated 180° left or 90° right as shown below, allowing the monitor to be angled for high- and low-angle photography or rotated to face the user for self-portraits (☐ 45).



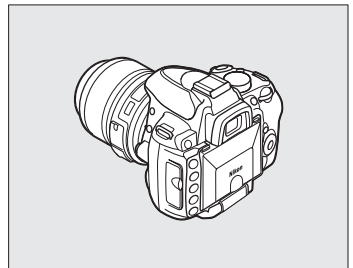
## ■ Shooting Position

In other situations, the monitor can be stowed on the camera body by opening it outward and rotating it 180° left before folding it back onto the camera body. This position is recommended for most shooting and playback.



## ■ Storage Position

To protect the monitor when the camera is not in use, fold it back onto the camera body as shown at right.



### ☑ Using the Monitor

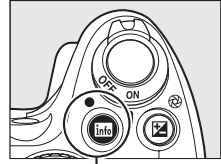
Rotate the monitor gently within the limits shown above. *Do not use force.* Failure to observe these precautions could damage the connection between the monitor and the camera body.

Adjust the monitor before mounting the camera on a tripod.



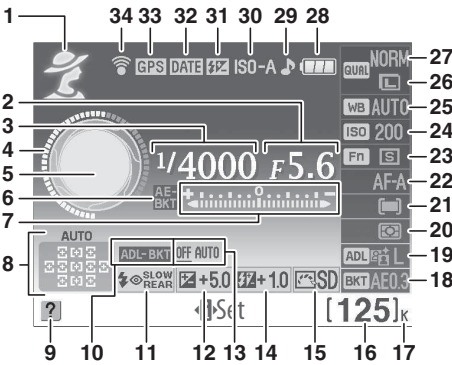
# The Information Display

Shooting information, including shutter speed, aperture, and the number of exposures remaining, is displayed in the monitor when the **Info** button is pressed.

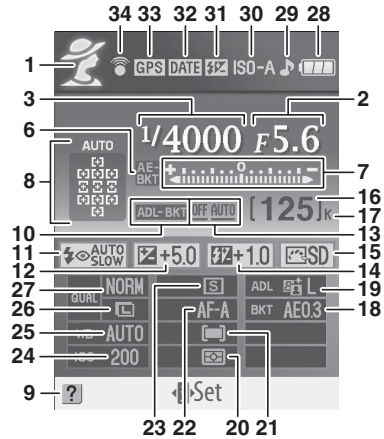


**Info** button

Camera in normal orientation



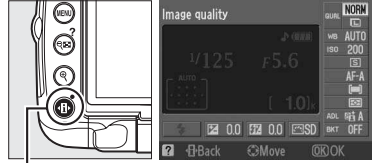
Camera rotated 90° to shoot in tall (portrait) orientation



<b>1</b> Shooting mode AUTO auto/ ⊕ auto (flash off) ..... 28 Scene modes ..... 33 P, S, A, and M modes ..... 80	<b>31</b> Flash mode ..... 71	<b>27</b> Image quality ..... 62
<b>2</b> Aperture (f-number) ..... 83, 84	<b>12</b> Exposure compensation ..... 90	<b>28</b> Battery indicator ..... 28
<b>3</b> Shutter speed ..... 82, 84	<b>13</b> ADL bracketing ..... 103	<b>29</b> “Beep” indicator ..... 158
<b>4</b> Shutter-speed display ..... 9	<b>14</b> Flash compensation ..... 92	<b>30</b> Auto ISO sensitivity indicator ..... 149
<b>5</b> Aperture display ..... 9	<b>15</b> Picture Control ..... 106	<b>31</b> Manual flash indicator ..... 162
<b>6</b> Exposure/white balance bracketing indicator ..... 103	<b>16</b> Number of exposures remaining ..... 29	Flash compensation indicator for optional flash units ... 200
<b>7</b> Exposure indicator ..... 85	Capture mode indicator ..... 134	<b>32</b> Date imprint indicator ..... 160
Exposure compensation indicator ..... 91	<b>17</b> “K” (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) ..... 29	<b>33</b> GPS connection indicator ..... 114
Bracketing progress indicator ..... 105	<b>18</b> Bracketing increment ..... 104	<b>34</b> Eye-Fi connection indicator ..... 173
<b>8</b> Auto-area AF indicator ..... 57	<b>19</b> Active D-Lighting ..... 94	
3D-tracking indicator ..... 57	<b>20</b> Metering ..... 88	
Focus point ..... 58	<b>21</b> AF-area mode ..... 56	
<b>9</b> Help indicator ..... 221	<b>22</b> Focus mode ..... 54	
<b>10</b> ADL bracketing indicator .... 105	<b>23</b> Release mode ..... 65	
	<b>24</b> ISO sensitivity ..... 74	
	<b>25</b> White balance ..... 96	
	<b>26</b> Image size ..... 64	

## ■ Changing Settings in the Information Display

To change settings for the items listed in the information display, press the **INFO** button. Highlight items using the multi selector and press **OK** to view options for the highlighted item. Some items can also be adjusted using the command dial and camera buttons (□ 10).

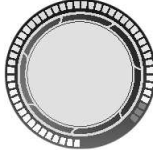


INFO button

### The Shutter-Speed and Aperture Displays

These displays provide visual indications of shutter speed and aperture.

*Fast shutter speed, large aperture (small f-number).*



*Slow shutter speed, small aperture (large f-number).*



While the mode dial is rotated, this display is replaced by an image of the mode dial.

### Turning the Monitor Off

To clear information from the display, press the **INFO** button again. Note that the monitor turns off automatically while the shutter-release is pressed or if no operations are performed for 8 s (the default value). The information display can be restored by pressing the **INFO** button.

### See Also

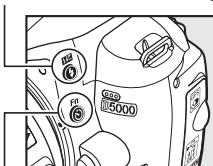
For information on choosing how long the monitor stays on, see Custom Setting c2 (**Auto off timers**, □ 157). For information on choosing a design for the information display, see **Info display format**, (□ 166). For information on choosing whether information is displayed when the shutter-release button is pressed; see **Auto information display** (□ 168). For information on choosing whether the cursor in the information display “wraps around,” see **Info wrap-around** (□ 168).



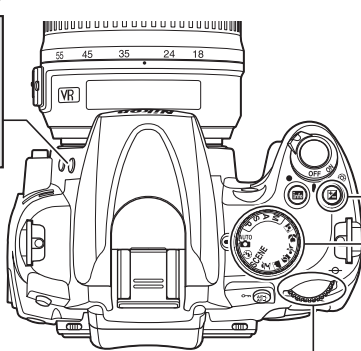
# The Command Dial

The command dial can be used with other controls to adjust a variety of settings when shooting information is displayed in the monitor.

**⚡ button:** flash mode and flash compensation



**Fn (☺) button:** release mode, image quality and size, ISO sensitivity, white balance, Active D-Lighting, or bracketing

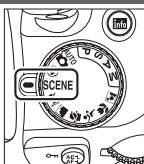


**☑ button:** aperture, exposure compensation, and flash compensation

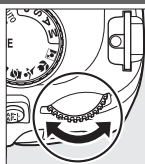
**Mode dial**

**Command dial**

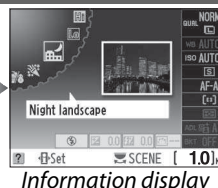
Choose a scene (**SCENE mode**; 34).



**SCENE mode**

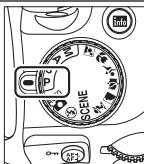


**Command dial**

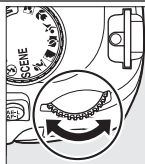


**Information display**

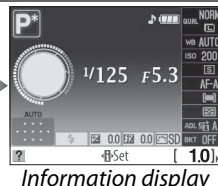
Choose a combination of aperture and shutter speed (**mode P**; 81).



**Mode P**

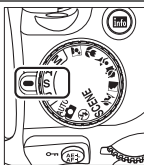


**Command dial**

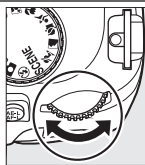


**Information display**

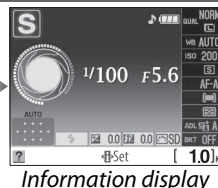
Choose a shutter speed (**mode S or M**; 82, 84).



**Mode S or M**

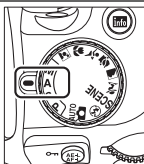


**Command dial**

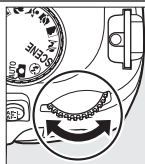


**Information display**

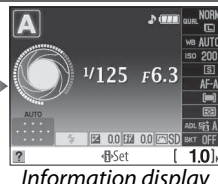
Choose an aperture (**mode A**; 83).



**Mode A**



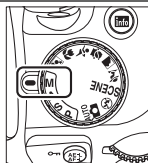
**Command dial**



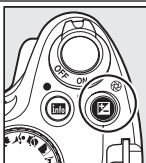
**Information display**



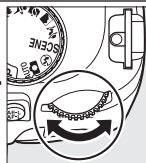
Choose an aperture (mode **M**; 84).



Mode **M**



button

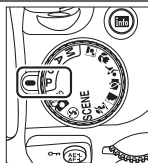


Command dial

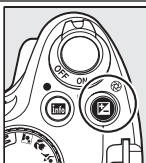


Information display

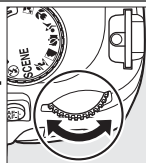
Set exposure compensation (mode **P**, **S**, or **A**; 90).



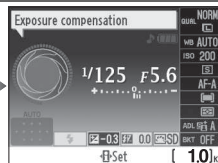
Mode **P**, **S**, or **A**



button

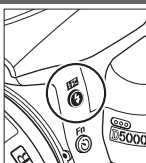


Command dial

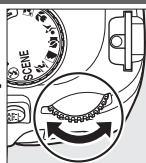


Information display

Choose a flash mode ( 71).



button

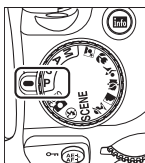


Command dial

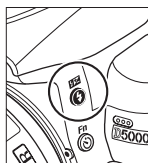


Information display

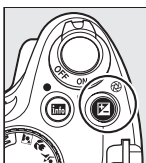
Adjust flash compensation (mode **P**, **S**, **A**, or **M**; 92).



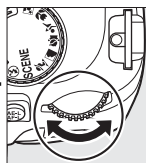
**P**, **S**, **A**, or **M**



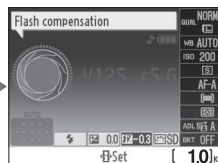
button



button



Command dial



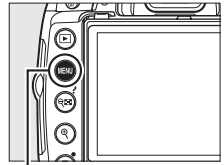
Information display





# Camera Menus

Most shooting, playback, and setup options can be accessed from the camera menus. To view the menus, press the **MENU** button.

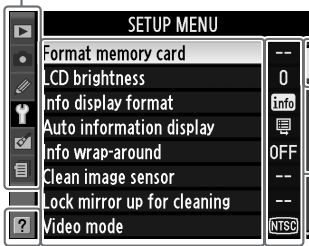


MENU button

## Tabs

Choose from the following menus:

- : **Playback** (book 146)
- : **Shooting** (book 148)
- : **Custom Settings** (book 153)
- : **Setup** (book 165)
- : **Retouch** (book 174)
- : **Recent settings or My Menu** (defaults to Recent settings; book 190)



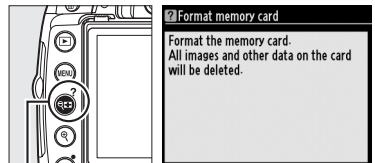
Slider shows position in current menu.

Current settings are shown by icons.

**Menu options**  
Options in current menu.



If a icon is displayed at the bottom left corner of the monitor, help can be displayed by pressing the **?** button. A description of the currently selected option or menu will be displayed while the button is pressed. Press **▲** or **▼** to scroll through the display.

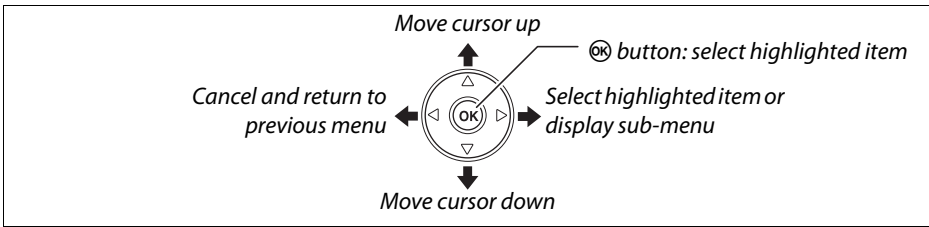


? button



# Using Camera Menus

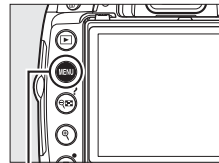
The multi selector and **OK** button are used to navigate the camera menus.



Follow the steps below to navigate the menus.

## 1 Display the menus.

Press the **MENU** button to display the menus.



**MENU** button

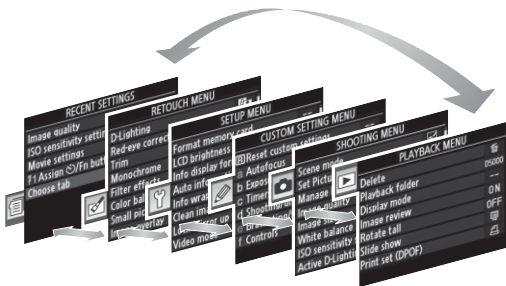
## 2 Highlight the icon for the current menu.

Press **◀** to highlight the icon for the current menu.



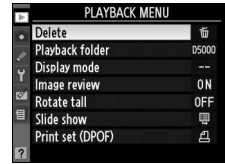
## 3 Select a menu.

Press **▲** or **▼** to position the cursor in the selected menu.



#### 4 Position the cursor in the selected menu.

Press **▶** to position the cursor in the selected menu.



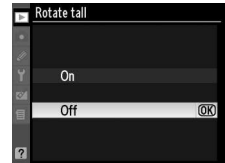
#### 5 Highlight a menu item.

Press **▲** or **▼** to highlight a menu item.



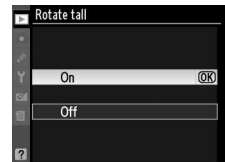
#### 6 Display options.

Press **▶** to display options for the selected menu item.



#### 7 Highlight an option.

Press **▲** or **▼** to highlight an option.



#### 8 Select the highlighted item.

Press **OK** to select the highlighted item. To exit without making a selection, press the **MENU** button.



Note the following:

- Menu items that are displayed in gray are not currently available.
- While pressing **▶** generally has the same effect as pressing **OK**, there are some cases in which selection can only be made by pressing **OK**.
- To exit the menus and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway (□ 32).

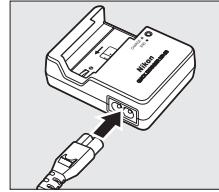
# First Steps

## Charge the Battery

The camera is powered by an EN-EL9a rechargeable Li-ion battery (supplied). To maximize shooting time, charge the battery in the supplied MH-23 quick charger before use. About one hour and forty minutes are required to fully recharge the battery when no charge remains.

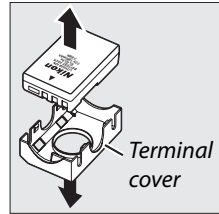
### 1 Plug the charger in.

Insert the AC adapter plug into the battery charger and plug the power cable into an electrical outlet.



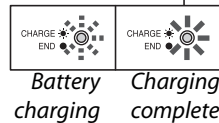
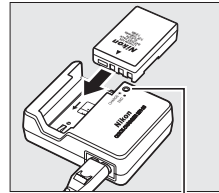
### 2 Remove the terminal cover.

Remove the terminal cover from the battery.



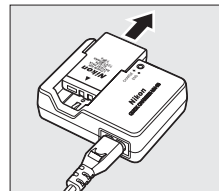
### 3 Insert the battery.

Insert the battery as shown in the illustration on the charger. The **CHARGE** lamp will blink while the battery charges.



### 4 Remove the battery when charging is complete.

Charging is complete when the **CHARGE** lamp stops blinking. Remove the battery and unplug the charger.

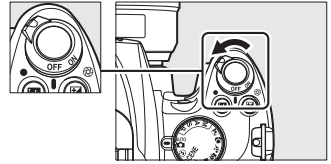


# Insert the Battery

## 1 Turn the camera off.

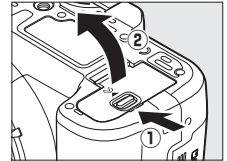
**✍ Inserting and Removing Batteries**  
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing batteries.

Power switch



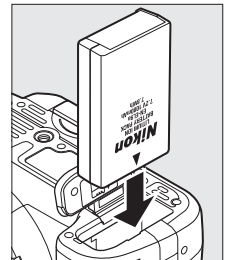
## 2 Open the battery-chamber cover.

Unlatch (1) and open (2) the battery-chamber cover.

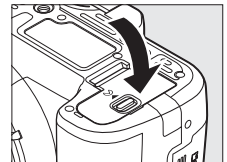


## 3 Insert the battery.

Insert the battery as shown at right.



## 4 Close the battery-chamber cover.



### **✓ The Battery and Charger**

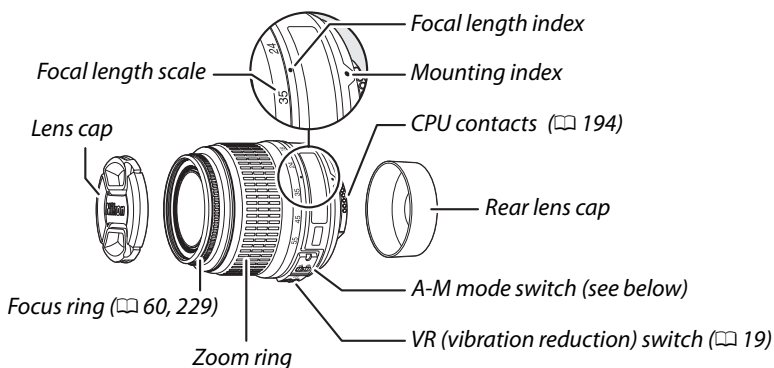
*Read and follow the warnings and cautions on pages xii–xiii and 210–211 of this manual. Do not use the battery at ambient temperatures below 0°C (32°F) or above 40°C (104°F). Charge the battery indoors at ambient temperatures between 5–35°C (41–95°F); for best results, charge the battery at temperatures above 20°C (68°F). Battery capacity may temporarily drop if the battery is charged at low temperatures or used at a temperature below the temperature at which it was charged.*

The battery may be hot immediately after use. Wait for the battery to cool before recharging.

Use the charger with compatible batteries only. Unplug when not in use.

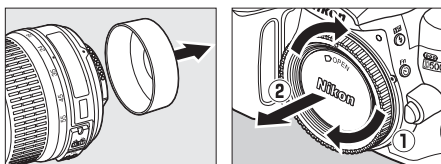
# Attach a Lens

Care should be taken to prevent dust from entering the camera when the lens is removed. An AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens is used in this manual for illustrative purposes.



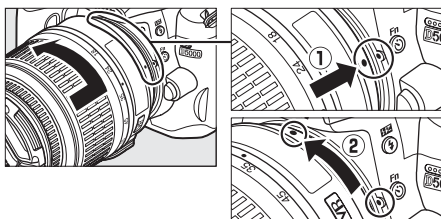
## 1 Turn the camera off.

## 2 Remove the rear lens cap and the camera body cap.



## 3 Attach the lens.

Keeping the mounting index on the lens aligned with the mounting index on the camera body, position the lens in the camera's bayonet mount (1). Being careful not to press the lens-release button, rotate the lens counter-clockwise until it clicks into place (2).



If the lens is equipped with an **A-M** or **M/A-M** switch, select **A** (autofocus) or **M/A** (autofocus with manual priority).



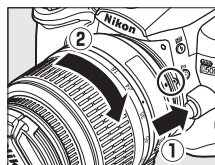
### Autofocus

Autofocus is supported with only AF-S and AF-I lenses, which are equipped with autofocus motors. Autofocus is not available with other AF lenses.



## ■ Detaching the Lens

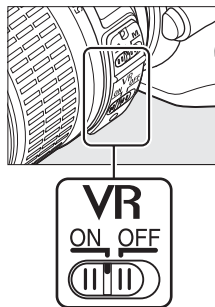
Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens release button (①) while turning the lens clockwise (②). After removing the lens, replace the lens caps and camera body cap.



## ■ Vibration Reduction (VR)

AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lenses support vibration reduction (VR), which reduces blur caused by camera shake even when the camera is panned, allowing shutter speeds to be slowed by approximately 3 EV at a focal length of 55 mm (Nikon measurements; effects vary with the user and shooting conditions).

To use vibration reduction, slide the VR switch to **ON**. Vibration reduction is activated when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, reducing the effects of camera shake on the image in the viewfinder and simplifying the process of framing the subject and focusing in both autofocus and manual modes. When the camera is panned, vibration reduction applies only to motion that is not part of the pan (if the camera is panned horizontally, for example, vibration reduction will be applied only to vertical shake), making it much easier to pan the camera smoothly in a wide arc.



Vibration reduction can be turned off by sliding the VR switch to **OFF**. Turn vibration reduction off when the camera is securely mounted on a tripod, but leave it on if the tripod head is not secured or when using a monopod.

### ✓ CPU Lenses with Aperture Rings

In the case of CPU lenses equipped with an aperture ring (☞ 194), lock aperture at the minimum setting (highest f-number).

### ✓ Vibration Reduction

Do not turn the camera off or remove the lens while vibration reduction is in effect. If power to the lens is cut while vibration reduction is on, the lens may rattle when shaken. This is not a malfunction, and can be corrected by reattaching the lens and turning the camera on.

Vibration reduction is disabled while the built-in flash is charging. When vibration reduction is active, the image in the viewfinder may be blurred after the shutter is released. This does not indicate a malfunction.

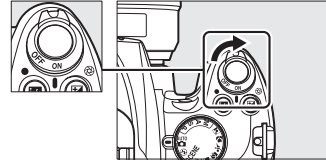
# Basic Setup

A language-selection dialog will be displayed the first time the camera is turned on. Choose a language and set the time and date. Photographs can not be taken until you have set the time and date.

## 1 Turn the camera on.

A language-selection dialog will be displayed.

Power switch



## 2 Select a language.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired language and press **OK**.



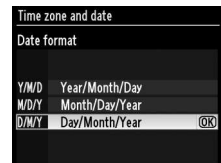
## 3 Choose a time zone.

A time-zone selection dialog will be displayed. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the local time zone (the **UTC** field shows the difference between the selected time zone and Coordinated Universal Time, or UTC, in hours) and press **OK**.



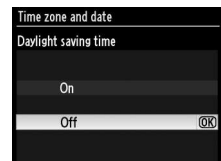
## 4 Choose a date format.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the order in which the year, month, and day will be displayed. Press **OK** to proceed to the next step.



## 5 Turn daylight saving time on or off.

Daylight saving time options will be displayed. Daylight saving time is off by default; if daylight saving time is in effect in the local time zone, press ▲ to highlight **On** and press **OK**.



## 6 Set the date and time.

The dialog shown at right will be displayed.  
Press ◀ or ▶ to select an item, ▲ or ▼ to change.  
Press OK to set the clock and exit to shooting mode.



### The Setup Menu

Language and date/time settings can be changed at any time using the **Language** (📖 169) and **Time zone and date** (📖 169) options in the setup menu.

### The Clock Battery

The camera clock is powered by an independent, rechargeable power source, which is charged as necessary when the main battery is installed or the camera is powered by an optional EP-5 power connector and EH-5a AC adapter (📖 204). Three days of charging will power the clock for about a month. If a message warning that the clock is not set is displayed when the camera is turned on, the clock battery is exhausted and the clock has been reset. Set the clock to the correct time and date.

### The Camera Clock

The camera clock is less accurate than most watches and household clocks. Check the clock regularly against more accurate time pieces and reset as necessary.



# Insert a Memory Card

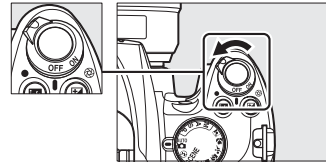
The camera stores pictures on Secure Digital (SD) memory cards (available separately).

## 1 Turn the camera off.

### Inserting and Removing Memory Cards

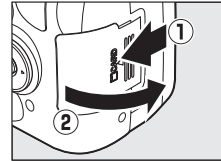
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing memory cards.

Power switch



## 2 Open the card slot cover.

Slide the card slot cover out (1) and open the card slot (2).

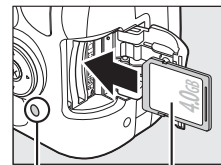


## 3 Insert the memory card.

Holding the memory card as shown at right, slide it in until it clicks into place. The memory card access lamp will light for a few seconds. Close the memory card slot cover.

### Inserting Memory Cards

Inserting memory cards upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card. Check to be sure the card is in the correct orientation.



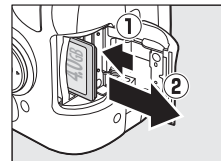
Front

Access lamp

If this is the first time the memory card will be used in the camera after being used or formatted in another device, format the card as described on page 23.

## ■ ■ Removing Memory Cards

After confirming that the access lamp is off, turn the camera off, open the memory card slot cover, and press the card in to eject it (1). The card can then be removed by hand (2).



# Format the Memory Card

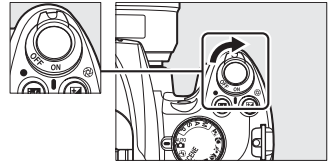
Memory cards must be formatted after being used or formatted in other devices. Format the card as described below.

## ✓ Formatting Memory Cards

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain. Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (134).

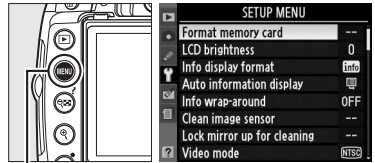
### 1 Turn the camera on.

Power switch



### 2 Display format options.

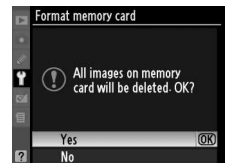
Press the **MENU** button to display the menus. Highlight **Format memory card** in the setup menu and press **▶**. For more information on using the menus, see page 13.



MENU button

### 3 Highlight Yes.

To exit without formatting the memory card, highlight **No** and press **OK**.



### 4 Press OK.

The message at right will be displayed while the card is formatted. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until formatting is complete.*



## ✓ Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not expose to water, heat, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

## ✍ The Write Protect Switch

Memory cards are equipped with a write protect switch to prevent accidental loss of data. When this switch is in the “lock” position, photos can not be recorded or deleted and the memory card can not be formatted. To unlock the memory card, slide the switch to the “write” position.



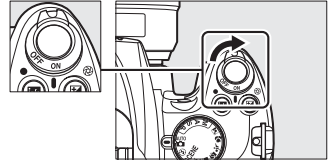
Write-protect switch

# Adjust Viewfinder Focus

The camera is equipped with diopter adjustment to accommodate individual differences in vision. Check that the display in the viewfinder is in focus before framing pictures in the viewfinder.

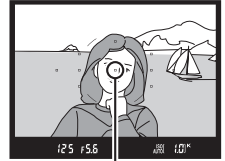
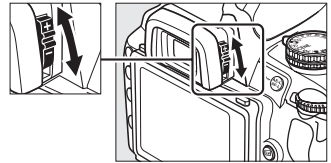
- 1 Remove the lens cap and turn the camera on.**

Power switch







- 2 Focus the viewfinder.**

Slide the diopter adjustment control up and down until the viewfinder display and focus point are in sharp focus. When operating the control with your eye to the viewfinder, be careful not to put your fingers or fingernails in your eye.



Focus point

## Adjusting Viewfinder Focus

If you are unable to focus the viewfinder as described above, select single-servo autofocus (**AF-S**;  54), single-point AF ( 57), and the center focus point ( 58), and then frame a high-contrast subject in the center focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus the camera. With the camera in focus, use the diopter adjustment control to bring the subject into clear focus in the viewfinder. If necessary, viewfinder focus can be further adjusted using optional corrective lenses ( 202).




























# Basic Photography and Playback



This chapter outlines the basics of taking and viewing photographs in auto and scene modes.

<b>“Point-and-Shoot” Photography (AUTO and Modes)</b> .....	<b>28</b>
Step 1: Turn the Camera On .....	28
Step 2: Select  or  Mode.....	30
Step 3: Frame the Photograph .....	30
Step 4: Focus .....	31
Step 5: Shoot.....	32
<b>Creative Photography (Scene Modes)</b> .....	<b>33</b>
 Portrait .....	34
 Landscape .....	34
 Child .....	34
 Sports .....	34
 Close Up .....	35
 Night Portrait.....	35
 Night Landscape .....	35
 Party/Indoor.....	35
 Beach/Snow .....	36
 Sunset.....	36
 Dusk/Dawn.....	36
 Pet Portrait .....	36
 Candlelight.....	37
 Blossom .....	37
 Autumn Colors .....	37
 Food.....	37
 Silhouette.....	38
 High Key .....	38
 Low Key .....	38
<b>Basic Playback</b> .....	<b>39</b>
Deleting Unwanted Photographs.....	40



# “Point-and-Shoot” Photography

## ( and Modes)

This section describes how to take photographs in  (auto) mode, an automatic “point-and-shoot” mode in which the majority of settings are controlled by the camera in response to shooting conditions, and in which the flash will fire automatically if the subject is poorly lit. To take photographs with the flash off while leaving the camera in control of other settings, rotate the mode dial to  to select auto (flash off) mode.

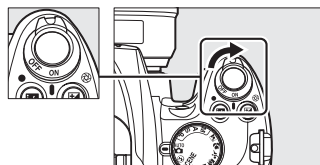


### Step 1: Turn the Camera On


#### 1 Turn the camera on.

Remove the lens cap and turn the camera on. After a brief pause while the camera cleans the image sensor, the information display will appear in the monitor.







Power switch



#### 2 Check the battery level.

Check the battery level in the information display or the viewfinder (if the monitor is off, press the  button to view the information display; if the monitor does not turn on, the battery is exhausted and must be recharged).



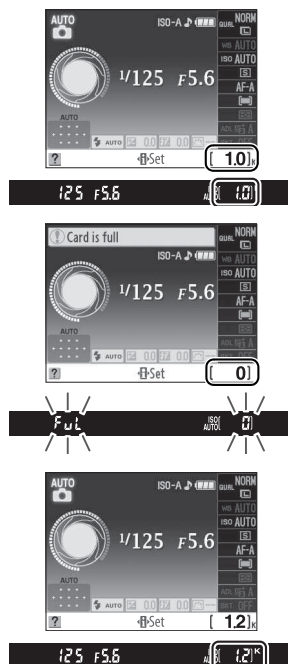
Information display	Viewfinder	Description
	—	Battery fully charged.
	—	Battery partially discharged.
		Low battery. Ready fully-charged spare battery or prepare to charge battery.
 (blinks)	 (blinks)	Battery exhausted; shutter release disabled. Charge or exchange battery.

### 3 Check the number of exposures remaining.

The information display and viewfinder show the number of photographs that can be stored on the memory card. Check the number of exposures remaining.

If there is not enough memory to store additional photographs at current settings, a warning will be displayed. No further pictures can be taken until the memory card has been replaced (□ 22) or photographs have been deleted (□ 40, 126).

When enough memory remains on the memory card to record a thousand or more pictures at current settings, the number of exposures remaining will be shown in thousands, rounded down to the nearest hundred (e.g., if there is room for 1,260 exposures, the exposure count display will show 1.2 K).



#### Auto Meter Off

At default settings, the viewfinder and information display will turn off if no operations are performed for about eight seconds (auto meter off), reducing the drain on the battery. Press the shutter-release button halfway to reactivate the display (□ 32).





The length of time before the exposure meters turn off automatically can be adjusted using Custom Setting c2 (**Auto off timers**; □ 157).

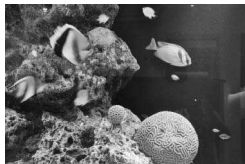
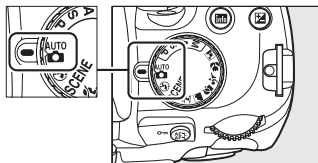
#### Image Sensor Cleaning

At default settings, the camera vibrates the low-pass filter covering the image sensor to remove dust when the camera is turned on or off.

## Step 2: Select <sup>AUTO</sup> or Mode

To shoot where use of a flash is prohibited, photograph infants, or capture natural lighting under low light conditions, rotate the mode dial to . Otherwise, rotate the mode dial to <sup>AUTO</sup> .

Mode dial



 mode




<sup>AUTO</sup> mode

## Step 3: Frame the Photograph

### 1 Ready the camera.

When framing photographs in the viewfinder, hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left. Keep your elbows propped lightly against your torso for support and place one foot half a pace ahead of the other to keep your upper body stable.

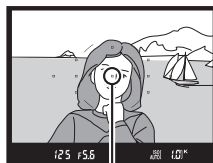
Hold the camera as shown at right when framing photographs in portrait (tall) orientation.

In  mode, shutter speeds slow when lighting is poor; use of a tripod is recommended.



### 2 Frame the photograph.

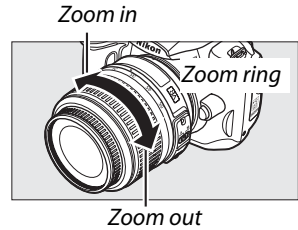
Frame a photograph in the viewfinder with the main subject in at least one of the 11 focus points.



Focus point

### **Using a Zoom Lens**

Use the zoom ring to zoom in on the subject so that it fills a larger area of the frame, or zoom out to increase the area visible in the final photograph (select longer focal lengths on the lens focal length scale index to zoom in, shorter focal lengths to zoom out).



## **Step 4: Focus**

### **1 Press the shutter-release button halfway.**

Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus. The camera will select the focus points automatically. If the subject is poorly lit, the flash may pop up and the AF-assist illuminator may light.

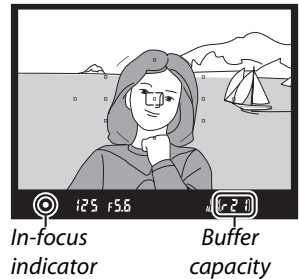


### **2 Check the indicators in the viewfinder.**

When the focus operation is complete, the selected focus points will be briefly highlighted, a beep will sound, and the in-focus indicator (●) will appear in the viewfinder.

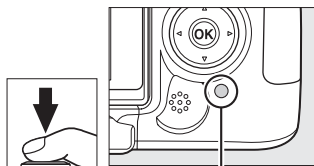
In-focus indicator	Description
●	Subject in focus.
● (blinks)	Camera unable to focus using autofocus. See page 55.

While the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, the number of exposures that can be stored in the memory buffer ("⌘"; 66) will be displayed in the viewfinder.



## Step 5: Shoot

Smoothly press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to release the shutter and record the photograph. The access lamp next to the memory card slot cover will light and the photograph will be displayed in the monitor for a few seconds (to resume shooting before the photograph clears from the display, press the shutter-release button halfway). *Do not eject the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the lamp has gone out and recording is complete.*

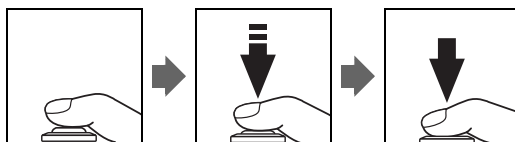


Access lamp





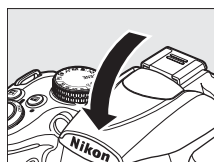
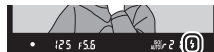
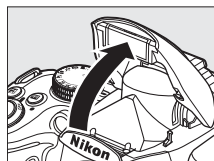
### The Shutter-Release Button

The camera has a two-stage shutter-release button. The camera focuses when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. To take the photograph, press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.



### The Built-in Flash

If additional lighting is required for correct exposure in  mode, the built-in flash will pop up automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If the flash is raised, photographs can only be taken when the flash-ready indicator () is displayed. If the flash-ready indicator is not displayed, the flash is charging; remove your finger briefly from the shutter-release button and try again.



To save battery power when the flash is not in use, return it to its closed position by pressing it gently downward till the latch clicks into place.

### Using the Flash

For more information on using the flash, see page 70.

# Creative Photography (Scene Modes)

The camera offers a choice of “scene” modes. Choosing a scene mode automatically optimizes settings to suit the selected scene, making creative photography as simple as selecting a mode, framing a picture, and shooting as described on pages 28–32.

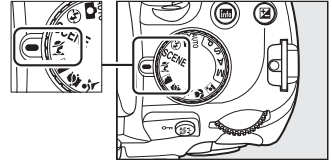


## ■ The Mode Dial

The following scenes can be selected with the mode dial:

Portrait 	Land- scape 	Child 	Sports 	Close up 	Night portrait 	Other scenes <b>SCENE</b>
--------------	--------------------	-----------	------------	--------------	-----------------------	---------------------------------

Mode dial

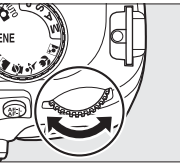
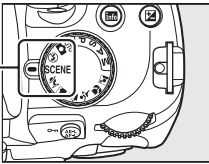


## ■ SCENE Mode

When the mode dial is rotated to **SCENE**, the following scenes can be selected by rotating the command dial until the desired scene is shown in the information display ( 8):



Mode dial



Command dial



Information display

Night landscape 	Party/indoor 	Beach/snow 	Sunset 	Dusk/dawn 	Pet portrait 	Candlelight 
------------------------	------------------	----------------	------------	---------------	------------------	-----------------

Blossom 	Autumn colors 	Food 	Silhouette 	High key 	Low key 
-------------	-------------------	----------	----------------	--------------	-------------

## ■ SCENE Mode

The mode selected when the mode dial is rotated to **SCENE** can also be chosen using the **Scene mode** option in the shooting menu ( 148).



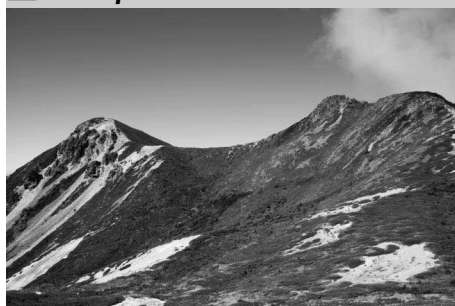
## ■ Scene Modes

### Portrait



Use for portraits with soft, natural-looking skin tones. If the subject is far from the background or a telephoto lens is used, background details will be softened to lend the composition a sense of depth.

### Landscape



Use for vivid landscape shots in daylight. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

### Child



Use for snapshots of children. Clothing and background details are vividly rendered, while skin tones remain soft and natural.

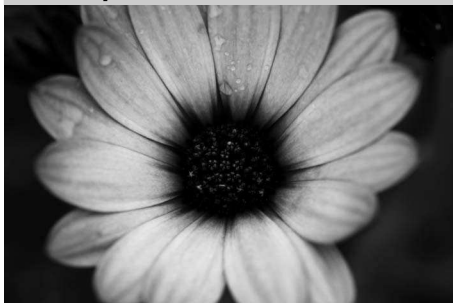
### Sports



Fast shutter speeds freeze motion for dynamic sports shots in which the main subject stands out clearly. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off.



### **Close Up**



Use for close-up shots of flowers, insects, and other small objects (a macro lens can be used to focus at very close ranges). Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur.

### **Night Landscape**



Reduce noise and unnatural colors when photographing night landscapes, including street lighting and neon signs. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur.



### **Night Portrait**



Use for a natural balance between the main subject and the background in portraits taken under low light. Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur.

### **Party/Indoor**



Capture the effects of indoor background lighting. Use for parties and other indoor scenes.

 **Beach/Snow**



Capture the brightness of sunlight expanses of water, snow, or sand. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off.

 **Dusk/Dawn**



Preserves the colors seen in the weak natural light before dawn or after sunset. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

 **Sunset**



Preserves the deep hues seen in sunsets and sunrises. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

 **Pet Portrait**



Use for portraits of active pets. The AF-assist illuminator turns off.

## **Candlelight**



For photographs taken by candlelight. The built-in flash turns off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

## **Autumn Colors**



Captures the brilliant reds and yellows in autumn leaves. The built-in flash turns off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.




## **Blossom**



Use for fields of flowers, orchards in bloom, and other landscapes featuring expanses of blossoms. The built-in flash turns off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

## **Food**



Use for vivid photographs of food. Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor; the flash can also be used ( 70).

## Silhouette



Silhouette subjects against bright backgrounds. The built-in flash turns off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

## Low Key




Use to create dark, somber images that bring out highlights when shooting dark scenes. The built-in flash turns off; use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blur when lighting is poor.

## High Key



Use to create bright images that seem filled with light when shooting bright scenes. The built-in flash turns off.


# Basic Playback

At default settings, photographs are automatically displayed for about 4 s after shooting. If no photograph is displayed in the monitor, the most recent picture can be viewed by pressing the  button.



## 1 Press the button.




A photograph will be displayed in the monitor.

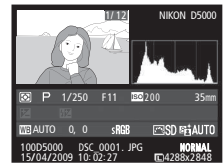


 button

## 2 View additional pictures.

Additional pictures can be displayed by pressing  or  or rotating the command dial.


To view additional information on the current photograph, press  and  ( 117).



To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway.



# Deleting Unwanted Photographs




To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the  button. Note that photographs can not be recovered once deleted.

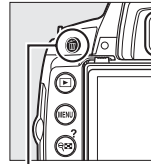
## 1 Display the photograph.

Display the photograph you wish to delete as described on the preceding page.



## 2 Delete the photograph.




Press the  button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press the  button again to delete the image and return to playback (to exit without deleting the picture, press ).



 button



### Delete

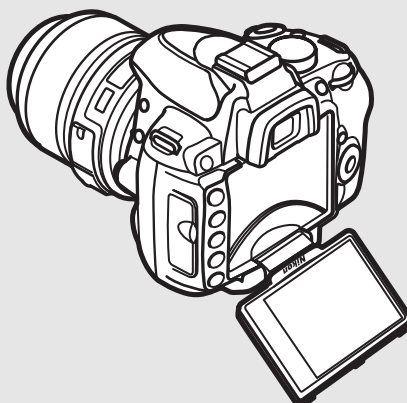
To delete selected images ( 127), all images taken on a selected date ( 128), or all images in the current playback folder ( 146), use the **Delete** option in the playback menu.



# Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)

This chapter describes how to frame pictures in the monitor using live view.

Framing Photographs in the Monitor..... 42

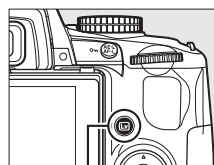


# Framing Photographs in the Monitor

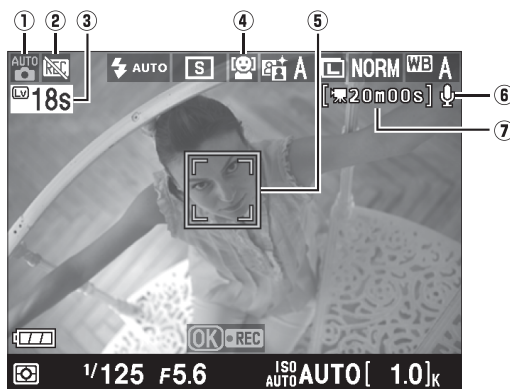
Follow the steps below to take photographs in live view.

## 1 Press the **Lv** button.

The mirror will be raised and the view through the lens will be displayed in the camera monitor. The subject will no longer be visible in the viewfinder.







Lv button

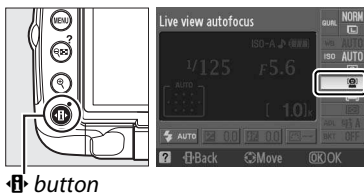


Item	Description	
① Shooting mode	The mode currently selected with the mode dial.	30, 33, 80
② "No movie" icon	Indicates that movies can not be recorded.	50
③ Time remaining	The amount of time remaining before live view ends automatically. Displayed if shooting will end in 30 s or less.	46
④ Live view autofocus	The current autofocus mode.	43
⑤ Focus point	The current focus point. The display varies with the option selected for autofocus mode (43).	43
⑥ Audio recording indicator	Indicates whether sound is being recorded with movies.	51
⑦ Time remaining (movie mode)	The recording time remaining in movie mode.	50







## 2 Choose an autofocus mode.


Press the  button and use the multi selector to highlight the current autofocus mode in the monitor. Press  to display the following options (the default option differs depending on the shooting mode;  78). Highlight an option and press .

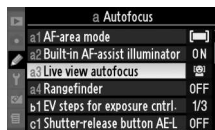


 button

Mode	Description
 <b>Face priority</b>	The camera automatically detects and focuses on portrait subjects facing the camera. Use for portraits.
 <b>Wide area</b>	Use for hand-held shots of landscapes and other non-portrait subjects. Use the multi selector to select the focus point.
 <b>Normal area</b>	Use for pin-point focus on a selected spot in the frame. A tripod is recommended.
 <b>Subject tracking</b>	Track a selected subject as it moves through the frame.

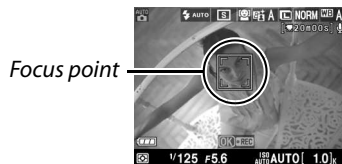
### Live View Autofocus

The autofocus mode for live view autofocus can also be chosen using Custom Settings a3 (**Live view autofocus**,  155).



## 3 Choose the focus point.


**Face priority:** A double yellow border will be displayed when the camera detects a portrait subject facing the camera (if multiple faces, up to a maximum of five, are detected, the camera will focus on the closest subject).



**Wide area and normal area:** Use the multi selector to move the focus point to any point in the frame.



*Focus point*

**Subject tracking:** Frame the subject in the center of the monitor and press  to focus. When the camera focuses, the focus point will turn yellow and then start tracking the selected subject as it moves through the frame.



*Focus point*



---

## 4 Focus.

Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus.



**Face priority:** The camera sets focus and exposure for the face in the double yellow border while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway; if the camera can no longer detect the subject (because, for example, the subject has looked away), borders will no longer be displayed.



**Wide area and normal area:** The camera focuses on the subject in the selected focus point while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.



**Subject tracking:** The camera focuses on the current subject. To end tracking, press ▲.



### Subject Tracking

Some time may be required for the camera to initiate focus. The camera may be unable to track subjects if they are small, moving quickly, or a similar color to the background, or if both the subject and the background are very bright or very dark, the brightness and color of the subject or background varies greatly, or the subject visibly changes size.

The focus point will blink green and the monitor may brighten or darken while the camera focuses. If the camera is able to focus, the focus point will be displayed in green; if the camera is unable to focus, the focus point will blink red. Note that pictures can be taken even when the focus point blinks red. Check focus in the monitor before shooting.

---


## 5 Take the picture.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot. The monitor will turn off. When shooting is complete, the photograph will be displayed in the monitor for 4 s or until the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. The camera will then return to live view mode.



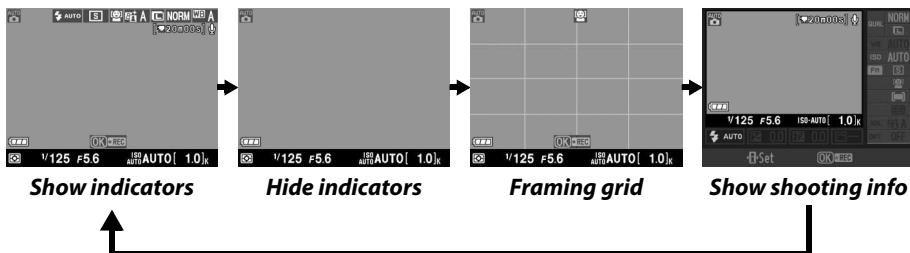
---

## 6 Exit live view mode.

Press the  button to exit live view mode.

## Live View Display Options

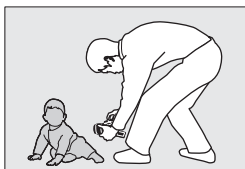
Press the **Info** button to cycle through display options as shown below. The options available depend on the setting selected for Custom Setting d7 (**Live view display options**; 161).



## Positioning the Monitor

The monitor can be adjusted for self-portraits or for low- or high-angle shots.

### Low-angle shots



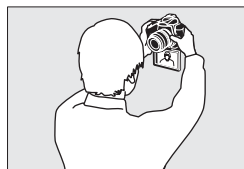
Frame shots with the camera close to the ground.

### High-angle shots



Frame shots while holding the camera over your head.

### Self-portraits



Monitor shows mirror image of what will appear in final picture.

## Exposure Compensation

In **P**, **S**, and **A** modes, exposure can be adjusted by  $\pm 5$  EV in increments of  $1/3$  EV ( 90). Note that the effects of values over +3 EV or under -3 EV can not be previewed in the monitor.

## HDMI

When the camera is attached to an HDMI video device, the camera monitor will turn off and the video device will display the view through the lens as shown at right.



### ✓ Shooting in Live View Mode

To prevent light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure, remove the rubber eyecup and cover the viewfinder with the supplied DK-5 eyepiece cap before shooting.

Although they will not appear in the final picture, banding or distortion may be visible in the monitor under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps or if the camera is panned horizontally or an object moves at high speed through frame. Bright light sources may leave after-images in the monitor when the camera is panned. Bright spots may also appear. When shooting in live view mode, avoid pointing the camera at the sun or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could result in damage to the camera's internal circuitry.

Live view shooting ends automatically if the monitor is closed or the lens is removed.

Live view mode can be used for up to an hour. Note, however, that when used in live view mode for extended periods, the temperature of the camera's internal circuits may rise, resulting in image noise and unusual colors (the camera may also become noticeably warm, but this does not indicate a malfunction). To prevent damage to the camera's internal circuits, live view shooting will end automatically before the camera overheats. A count-down display will appear in the monitor 30 s before shooting ends. At high ambient temperatures, this display may appear immediately when live view mode is selected.



During live view, the camera displays the shutter speed and aperture in effect at the start of live view. Exposure is metered again when the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down.

To reduce blur when using a tripod, choose **On** for Custom Setting d5 (**Exposure delay mode**).


### ✓ Using Autofocus in Live View

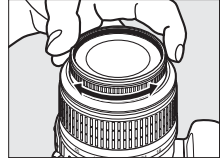
Autofocus is slower in live view. The camera may be unable to focus in the following situations:



- The subject contains lines parallel to the long edge of the frame
- The subject lacks contrast
- The subject in the focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness, or the subject is lit by spot lighting or by a neon sign or other light source that changes in brightness
- A cross (star) filter or other special filter is used
- The subject appears smaller than the focus point
- The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns (e.g., windows in a skyscraper)
- The subject is moving

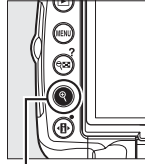
Note that the focus point may sometimes be displayed in green when the camera is unable to focus.

## **Manual Focus**

To focus in manual focus mode ( 60), rotate the lens focus ring until the subject is in focus.



To magnify the view in the monitor up to about  $6.7\times$  for precise focus, press the  button. While the view through the lens is zoomed in, a navigation window will appear in a gray frame at the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll to areas of the frame not visible in the monitor (available only if **Wide area** or **Normal area** is selected for **Live view autofocus**), or press  to zoom out.



 button



Navigation window

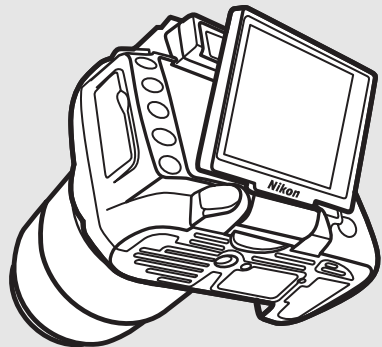




# Recording and Viewing Movies

This chapter describes how to record movies in live view.

Recording Movies.....	50
Viewing Movies.....	52

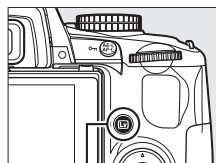


# Recording Movies

Movies can be recorded at 24 fps in live view mode.


## 1 Press the **Lv** button.

The mirror is raised and the view through the lens is displayed in the monitor instead of the viewfinder.



Lv button

### ✓ The Icon

A  icon (□ 42) indicates that movies can not be recorded.

### ✓ Modes **A** and **M**

Set aperture before recording in mode **A** or **M**.

## 2 Focus.

Frame the opening shot and press the shutter-release button halfway. Shooting can not begin until the camera has focused.

Autofocus is not available after recording begins; use manual focus to focus (□ 60) during recording.



## 3 Start recording.

Press **OK** to start recording (at default settings, both video and sound are recorded; do not cover the microphone on the front of the camera during recording). A recording indicator and the time available are displayed in the monitor.

Exposure can be locked by pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button (□ 89) or (in **P**, **S**, and **A**) altered by up to  $\pm 3$  EV in steps of  $\frac{1}{3}$  EV using exposure compensation (□ 90).

Recording indicator



Time remaining

## 4 End recording.

Press **OK** again to end recording (to end recording and take a still picture in the mode currently selected with the mode dial, press the shutter-release button all the way down). Recording will end automatically when the maximum size is reached or the memory card is full.



### ✓ Maximum Size

Each movie file can be up to 2 GB in size. The maximum length is 5 min for movies with a frame size of 1280 × 720, 20 min for other movies; note that depending on memory card write speed, shooting may end before this length is reached.

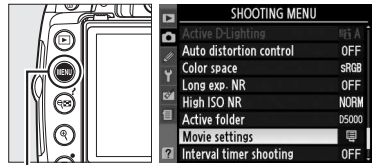


## ■ Movie Settings

To choose movie frame size and sound options:

### 1 Select Movie settings.

Press the **MENU** button to display the menus. Highlight **Movie settings** in the shooting menu and press **▶**.



MENU button

### 2 Choose frame size and sound recording options.

To choose a frame size, highlight **Quality** and press **▶**. Highlight one of the following options and press **OK** to select:



Option	Frame size (pixels)	Maximum length
<b>1280×720 (16:9)</b>	1280 × 720	5 min.
<b>640×424 (3:2)</b>	640 × 424	20 min.
<b>320×216 (3:2)</b>	320 × 216	

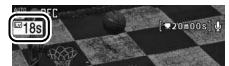
To turn sound recording on or off, highlight **Sound** and press **▶**. To record monaural sound with movies, highlight **On** and press **OK**. Select **Off** to record silent movies.

#### Recording Movies

Banding or distortion may be visible in the monitor and in the final movie under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps or if the camera is panned horizontally or an object moves at high speed through frame. Bright light sources may leave after-images when the camera is panned. Jagged edges, false colors, moiré, and bright spots may also appear. When recording movies, avoid pointing the camera at the sun or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could result in damage to the camera's internal circuitry.

Recording ends automatically if the lens is removed. Unless the camera is connected to a TV, recording will also end if the monitor is closed.


When used in live view or movie-recording mode for extended periods, the temperature of the camera's internal circuits may rise, resulting in image noise and unusual colors (the camera may also become noticeably warm, but this does not indicate a malfunction). To prevent damage to the camera's internal circuits, recording will end automatically before the camera overheats. A count-down display will appear in the monitor 30 s before shooting ends. At high ambient temperatures, this display may appear immediately when live view mode is selected.


















Matrix metering is used regardless of the metering method selected.

The camera may record the sound made by VR lenses when vibration reduction is on.

# Viewing Movies

Movies are indicated by a  icon in full-frame playback (□ 116). The following operations can be performed while a movie is displayed:



To	Use	Description
Start/pause/resume		Press  to start, pause, or resume playback.
Advance/rewind		Press  or  to rewind or fast forward. While playback is paused, press  or  to rewind or advance one frame.
Adjust volume		Press  to increase volume,  to decrease.
Exit to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	<b>MENU</b>	See page 145 for more information.
Return to full-frame playback	 / 	Press  or  to exit to full-frame playback.



# More on Photography (All Modes)

This and the following two chapters build on the Tutorial to cover more advanced shooting and playback options.

<b>Focus .....</b>	<b>54</b>
Focus Mode .....	54
AF-Area Mode .....	56
Focus Point Selection .....	58
Focus Lock .....	58
Manual Focus.....	60
<b>Image Quality and Size.....</b>	<b>62</b>
Image Quality .....	62
Image Size.....	64
<b>Release Mode .....</b>	<b>65</b>
Self-Timer and Remote Modes .....	67
<b>Using the Built-in Flash .....</b>	<b>70</b>
Flash Mode .....	71
<b>ISO Sensitivity .....</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>Interval Timer Photography .....</b>	<b>76</b>
<b>Two-Button Reset .....</b>	<b>78</b>



# Focus

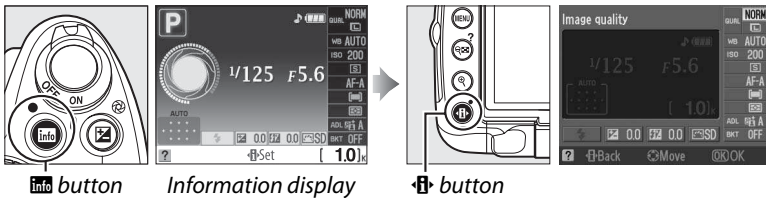
Focus can be adjusted automatically or manually (see “Focus Mode,” below). The user can also select the focus point for automatic or manual focus (☐ 60) or use focus lock to focus to recompose photographs after focusing (☐ 58).

## Focus Mode

Choose from automatic and manual focus modes.

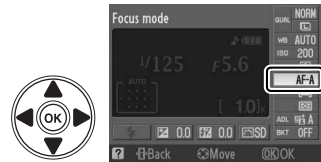
### 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



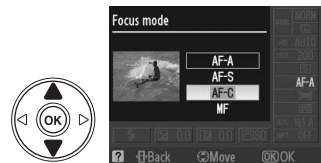
### 2 Display focus-mode options.

Highlight the current focus mode in the information display and press **OK**.



### 3 Choose a focus mode.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**. Note that **AF-S** and **AF-C** are available only in modes **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M**.



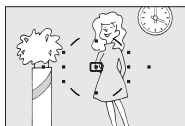
Option	Description
<b>AF-A</b> <b>Auto-servo AF</b>	Camera automatically selects single-servo autofocus if subject is stationary, continuous-servo autofocus if subject is moving.
<b>AF-S</b> <b>Single-servo AF</b>	For stationary subjects. Focus locks when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.
<b>AF-C</b> <b>Continuous-servo AF</b>	For moving subjects. Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.
<b>MF</b> <b>Manual focus</b>	Focus manually (☐ 60).

## ✓ Continuous-servo Autofocus

In **AF-C** mode or when continuous-servo autofocus is selected in **AF-A** mode, the camera gives priority to shutter response and the shutter may be released before the in-focus indicator is displayed.

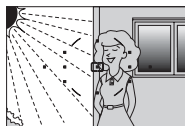
## ✎ Getting Good Results with Autofocus

Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. The shutter release may be disabled if the camera is unable to focus under these conditions, or the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed and the camera may sound a beep, allowing the shutter to be released even when the subject is not in focus. In these cases, focus manually (□ 60) or use focus lock (□ 58) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.



*There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background.*

**Example:** Subject is the same color as the background.



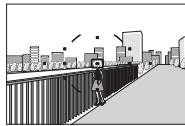
*The focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness.*

**Example:** Subject is half in the shade.



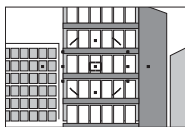
*The focus point contains objects at different distances from the camera.*

**Example:** Subject is inside a cage.



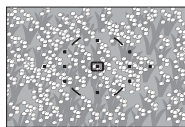
*Background objects appear larger than the subject.*

**Example:** a building is in the frame behind the subject.



*The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns.*

**Example:** A row of windows in a skyscraper.



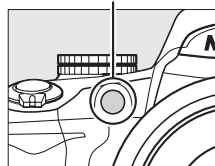
*The subject contains many fine details.*

**Example:** A field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.

## ✓ The AF-Assist Illuminator

If the subject is poorly lit, the AF-assist illuminator will light automatically to assist the autofocus operation when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. The AF-assist illuminator will not light during continuous-servo autofocus or manual focus, in shooting modes in which the AF-assist illuminator can not be used, or if **Off** has been selected for Custom Setting a2 (**Built-in AF-assist illuminator**; □ 155). The illuminator has a range of about 0.5–3.0 m (1 ft. 8 in.–9 ft. 10 in.); when using the illuminator, use a lens with a focal length of 18–200 mm and remove the lens hood.

*AF-assist illuminator*



## ✎ The Beep Speaker

Custom Setting d1 (**Beep**; □ 158) can be used to turn the beep speaker on or off.

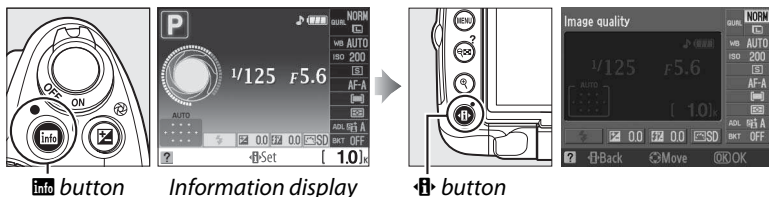


# AF-Area Mode

Choose how the focus point for autofocus is selected.

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Right Arrow** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display AF-area mode options.

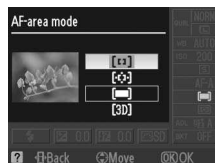
Highlight the current AF-area mode in the information display and press **OK**.












### 3 Choose an AF-area mode.


Highlight one of the following options and press

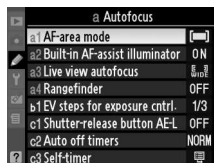
.



Option	Description
 <b>Single point</b>	User selects focus point using multi selector (  58); camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only. Use with stationary subjects.
 <b>Dynamic area</b>	<b>In AF-A and AF-C focus modes</b> , user selects focus point manually (  58), but camera will focus based on information from surrounding focus points if subject briefly leaves selected point. Use with erratically moving subjects. <b>In AF-S focus mode</b> , user selects focus point manually (  58); camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only.
 <b>Auto-area</b>	Camera automatically detects subject and selects focus point.
 <b>3D-tracking (11 points)</b>	<b>In AF-A and AF-C focus modes</b> , user selects focus point using multi selector (  58). If subject moves after camera has focused, camera uses 3D-tracking to select new focus point and keep focus locked on original subject while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If subject leaves viewfinder, remove your finger from shutter-release button and recompose photograph with subject in selected focus point. <b>In AF-S focus mode</b> , user selects focus point manually (  58); camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only.

#### **AF-Area Mode**

AF-area mode can also be selected from the Custom Settings menu ( 155). AF-area mode selections made in shooting modes other than P, S, A, or M are reset when another shooting mode is selected.



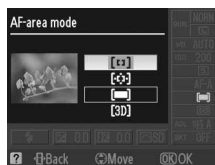
#### **3D-tracking (11 Points)**

When the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, the colors in the area surrounding the focus point are stored in the camera. Consequently 3D-tracking may not produce the desired results with subjects that are the same color as the background.

## Focus Point Selection

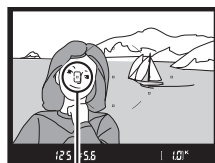
In manual focus mode or when autofocus is combined with AF-area modes other than **Auto-area**, you can choose from 11 focus points, making it possible to compose photographs with the main subject almost anywhere in the frame.

- 1 Choose an AF-area mode other than **Auto area** (56).



- 2 Select the focus point.

Use the multi selector to select the focus point in the viewfinder or information display. Press **OK** to select the center focus area.



## Focus Lock

Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing in AF-A, AF-S, and AF-C focus modes (54), making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in a focus point in the final composition. If the camera is unable to focus using autofocus (55), you can also focus on another subject at the same distance and then use focus lock to recompose the photograph. Focus lock is most effective when an option other than **Auto-area** is selected for AF-area mode (56).

- 1 Focus.

Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus. Check that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

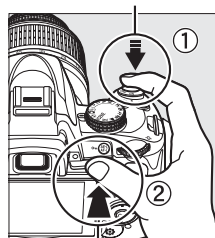




## 2 Lock focus.

**AF-A and AF-C focus modes:** With the shutter-release button pressed halfway (①), press the **AE-L/AF-L** button (②) to lock both focus and exposure (an **AE-L** icon will be displayed in the viewfinder). Focus will remain locked while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.

Shutter-release button



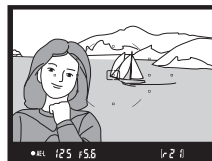
AE-L/AF-L button



**AF-S focus mode:** Focus will lock automatically when the in-focus indicator appears, and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Focus can also be locked by pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button (see above).

## 3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.

Focus will remain locked between shots if you keep the shutter-release button pressed halfway (**AF-S**) or keep the **AE-L/AF-L** button pressed, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting.



Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.

### The AE-L/AF-L Button

Custom Setting f2 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**;  164) controls the behavior of the **AE-L/AF-L** button.

# Manual Focus

Manual focus can be used when you are not using an AF-S or AF-I lens or when autofocus does not produce the desired results (□ 55).

## 1 Set the lens focus-mode switch.

If the lens is equipped with an A-M or M/A-M switch, slide the switch to **M**.

A-M switch

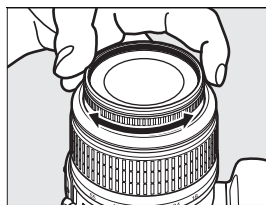


M/A-M switch



## 2 Focus.

To focus manually, adjust the lens focus ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.



### AF-S Lenses

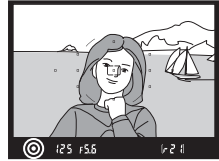
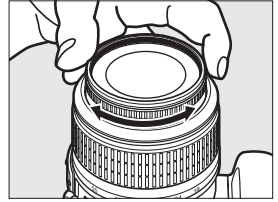
Users of AF-S lenses (including the AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens used in this manual for illustrative purposes; □ 229) can select manual focus simply by setting the lens focus-mode switch to **M**.

### M/A

If the lens supports M/A (autofocus with manual override, MF priority), manual focus can also be selected by setting the camera focus mode to **MF** (manual focus; □ 54). Focus can then be adjusted manually, regardless of the mode selected with the lens.

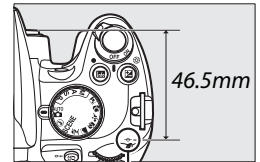
## ■ The Electronic Rangefinder

If the lens has a maximum aperture of  $f/5.6$  or faster, the viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus point is in focus (the focus point can be selected from any of the 11 focus points). After positioning the subject in the selected focus point, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focus ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed. Note that with the subjects listed on page 55, the in-focus indicator may sometimes be displayed when the subject is not in focus; confirm focus in the viewfinder before shooting.



### Focal Plane Position

To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83 in.).



*Focal plane mark*

### The Exposure Indicator

If desired, the exposure indicator can be used to determine whether the focus point for manual focus is in front of or behind the subject (☞ 156).





Option	File type	Description
<b>NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine</b>		Two images are recorded: one NEF (RAW) image and one fine-quality JPEG image.
<b>NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal</b>	NEF/ JPEG	Two images are recorded: one NEF (RAW) image and one normal-quality JPEG image.
<b>NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic</b>		Two images are recorded: one NEF (RAW) image and one basic-quality JPEG image.

### **NEF (RAW) Images**

Note that the option selected for image size does not affect the size of NEF (RAW) images. White balance bracketing (☐ 103) and date imprint (☐ 160) are not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW)+JPEG.

NEF (RAW) images can be viewed on the camera or using software such as Capture NX 2 (available separately; ☐ 202) or ViewNX (available on the supplied Software Suite CD). JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) images can be created using the **NEF (RAW) processing** option in the retouch menu (☐ 184).

### **NEF (RAW)/NEF+JPEG**

When photographs taken at **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic** are viewed on the camera, only the JPEG image will be displayed. When photographs taken at these settings are deleted, both NEF and JPEG images will be deleted.

### **File Names**

Photographs are stored as image files with names of the form “DSC\_####.xxx,” where #### is a four-digit number between 0001 and 9999 assigned automatically in ascending order by the camera, and xxx is one of the following three letter extensions: “NEF” for NEF images, “JPG” for JPEG images, or “AVI” for movies. The NEF and JPEG files recorded at a setting of “NEF+JPEG” have the same file names but different extensions. Small copies created with the small picture option in the retouch menu have file names beginning with “SSC\_” and ending with the extension “.JPG” (e.g., “SSC\_0001.JPG”). Stop motion movies have file names beginning with “ASC\_” (e.g., “ASC\_0001.AVI”); images recorded with the other options in the retouch menu have file names beginning with “CSC” (e.g., “CSC\_0001.JPG”). Images recorded with the **Color space** option in the shooting menu set to **Adobe RGB** (☐ 150) have names that begin with an underscore (e.g., “\_DSC0001.JPG”).

### **The Shooting Menu**

Image quality can also be adjusted using the **Image quality** option in the shooting menu (☐ 148).



### **The Fn Button**

Image quality and size can also be adjusted by pressing the **Fn** (☺) button and rotating the command dial (☐ 163).

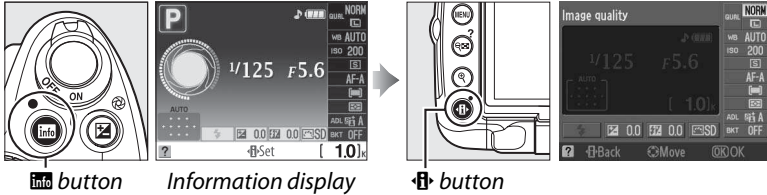


# Image Size

Image size is measured in pixels.

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display image size options.

Highlight the current image size in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose an image size.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.

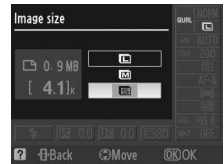


Image size	Size (pixels)	Approximate size when printed at 200 dpi
Large	4,288 × 2,848	54.5 × 36.2 cm (21.4 × 14.2 in.)
Medium	3,216 × 2,136	40.8 × 27.1 cm (16.1 × 10.7 in.)
Small	2,144 × 1,424	27.2 × 18.1 cm (10.7 × 7.1 in.)

### The Shooting Menu

Image size can also be adjusted using the **Image size** option in the shooting menu (148).



### The Fn Button

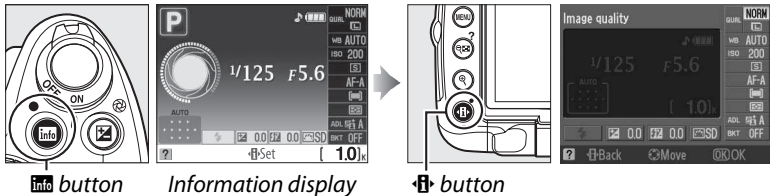
Image quality and size can also be adjusted by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating the command dial (163).

# Release Mode

Release mode determines how the camera takes photographs: one at a time, in a continuous sequence, with a timed shutter-release delay or remote control, or with reduced camera noise.

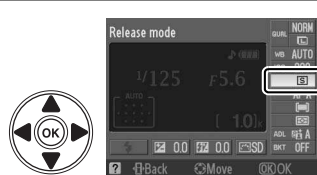
## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display release mode options.

Highlight the current release mode in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose a release mode.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.





Mode	Description
<b>S</b> <b>Single frame</b>	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.
<b>C</b> <b>Continuous</b>	Camera records about 4 frames per second while shutter-release button is held down.
<b>T</b> <b>Self-timer</b>	Use for self-portraits or to reduce blurring caused by camera shake (□ 67).
<b>2s</b> <b>Delayed remote</b>	Optional ML-L3 wireless remote control required. Shutter is released after two-second delay (□ 67).
<b>Q</b> <b>Quick-response remote</b>	Optional ML-L3 wireless remote control required. Shutter is released immediately (□ 67).
<b>Q</b> <b>Quiet shutter-release</b>	As for <b>S</b> (single frame) except that camera makes no sound until finger is removed from shutter-release button after shooting and beep does not sound when camera focuses, keeping noise to a minimum in quiet surroundings.

### **The Memory Buffer**

The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. Up to 100 photographs can be taken in succession; note, however, that frame rate will drop when the buffer is full.

While photographs are being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the memory card slot will light. Depending on the number of the images in the buffer, recording may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the access lamp has gone out.* If the camera is switched off while data remain in the buffer, the power will not turn off until all images in the buffer have been recorded. If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and the images transferred to the memory card.

### **Continuous Release Mode**

Continuous release mode () can not be used with the built-in flash; rotate the mode dial to  (□ 30) or turn the flash off (□ 70–71).

### **Buffer Size**


The approximate number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the viewfinder exposure-count display while the shutter-release button is pressed. The illustration shows the display when space remains in the buffer for about 21 pictures.



### **Auto Image Rotation**

The camera orientation recorded for the first shot applies to all images in the same burst, even if the camera is rotated during shooting. See “Auto Image Rotation” (□ 170).

### **See Also**

For information on using the **Fn** () button and the command dial to select a release mode, see page 163. For information on the number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst, see page 215.



# Self-Timer and Remote Modes

The self-timer and optional ML-L3 wireless remote control (☐ 203) can be used to reduce camera shake or for self-portraits.

## 1 Mount the camera on a tripod.

Mount the camera on a tripod or place the camera on a stable, level surface.

## 2 Select a release mode (☐ 65).

Select self-timer (☺), delayed remote (⏸ 2s), or quick response release mode (⏸).



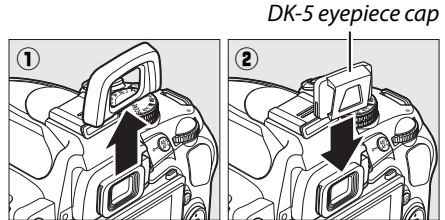
## 3 Frame the photograph.

### ✍ Using a Remote Control

If autofocus is in effect in delayed remote or quick response release mode, the camera can be focused by pressing the shutter-release button halfway (the shutter will not be released if the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down).

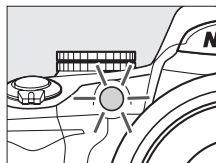
### ✍ Cover the Viewfinder.

After framing the photograph, remove the rubber eyecup (①) and insert the supplied DK-5 eyepiece cap as shown (②). This prevents light entering via the viewfinder interfering with exposure. Hold the camera firmly when removing the eyepiece cup.



## 4 Take the photograph.

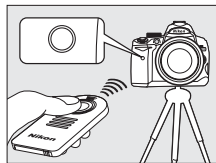
**Self-timer mode:** Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus, and then press the button the rest of the way down to start the self-timer. The self-timer lamp will start to blink and a beep will begin to sound. Two seconds before the photograph is taken, the self-timer lamp will stop blinking and the beeping will become more rapid. The shutter will be released about ten seconds after the timer starts.



The timer will not start if the camera is unable to focus or in other situations in which the shutter can not be released.

### **Delayed remote and quick response modes:**

From a distance of 5 m (16 ft.) or less, aim the transmitter on the ML-L3 at the infrared receiver on the camera and press the shutter-release button on the ML-L3. In delayed remote mode, the self-timer lamp will light for about two seconds before the shutter is released. In quick-response remote mode, the self-timer lamp will flash after the shutter has been released. No picture will be taken if the camera is unable to focus or in other situations in which the shutter can not be released.



If no operations are performed for about a minute after selecting delayed remote or quick-response remote modes, the camera will automatically return to single frame, continuous, or quiet shutter-release mode, cancelling remote control mode.

Turning the camera off cancels self-timer and remote release modes and restores single frame, continuous, or quiet shutter-release mode.

## ✔ Before Using the Remote Control

Before using the remote control for the first time, remove the clear plastic battery insulator sheet.

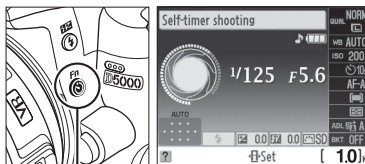
## ✔ Using the Built-in Flash

Before taking a photograph with the flash in **P, S, A, M,** or **⌘** modes, press the **⚡** button to raise the flash and wait for the **⚡** indicator to be displayed in the viewfinder (☐ 70). Shooting will be interrupted if the flash is raised after the self-timer or delayed remote timer has started. In auto or scene modes in which the flash pops up automatically, the flash will begin charging when delayed remote or quick-response remote mode is selected; once the flash is charged, it will automatically pop up and fire if required when the shutter-release button on the ML-L3 is pressed. The camera will only respond to the shutter-release button on the ML-L3 once the flash has charged. Only one photograph will be taken when the flash is used, regardless of the number of shots selected for Custom Setting c3 (**Self-timer**, ☐ 157).

In flash modes that support red-eye reduction, the red-eye reduction lamp will light for about one second before the shutter is released. In delayed remote mode, the self-timer lamp will light for two seconds, followed by the red-eye reduction lamp, which lights for one second before the shutter is released to reduce red-eye.

## ✎ The **⌚** Button

Self-timer mode can also be selected by pressing the **⌚** button (☐ 163).



**⌚** button

## ✎ See Also

For information on changing the duration of the self-timer and choosing the number of shots taken, see Custom Setting c3 (**Self-timer**, ☐ 157). For information on choosing the length of time the camera will remain in standby mode before remote control mode is cancelled, see Custom Setting c4 (**Remote on duration**, ☐ 157). For information on controlling the beeps that sound when the self-timer and remote control are used, see Custom Setting d1 (**Beep**, ☐ 158).



# Using the Built-in Flash

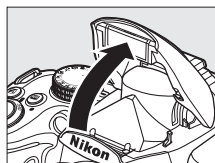
The camera supports a variety of flash modes for photographing poorly lit or backlit subjects.

## ■ ■ Using the Built-in Flash: , , , , , , and Modes

### 1 Choose a flash mode ( 71).


### 2 Take pictures.

The flash will pop up as required when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and fire when a photograph is taken.




## ■ ■ Using the Built-in Flash: P, S, A, M, and Modes

### 1 Raise the flash.

Press the  button to raise the flash.

### 2 Choose a flash mode ( 71).

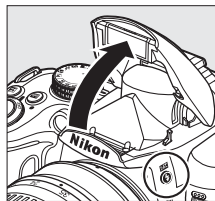
This step can be omitted when shooting in  mode.

### 3 Take pictures.

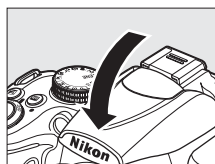
The flash will fire whenever a picture is taken.

## ■ ■ Lowering the Built-in Flash

To save power when the flash is not in use, press it gently downward until the latch clicks into place.



 button

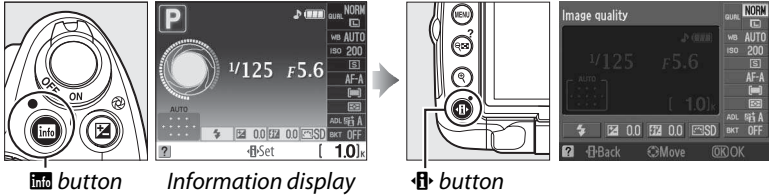


# Flash Mode

To choose a flash mode:

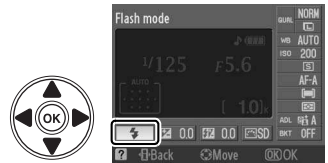
## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



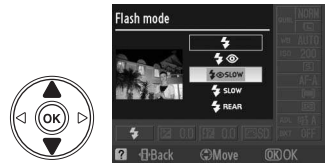
## 2 Display flash mode options.

Highlight the current flash mode in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose a flash mode.

Highlight a flash mode and press **OK**.




P, A		S, M	
	Fill flash		Fill flash
	Red-eye reduction		Red-eye reduction
	Slow sync + red-eye reduction		Rear-curtain sync
	Slow sync		
	Rear curtain + slow sync		

\* SLOW appears in information display when setting is complete.

## Flash Modes

The flash modes listed on the previous page may combine one or more of the following settings, as shown by the flash mode icon:

- **AUTO (auto flash):** When lighting is poor or subject is back lit, flash pops up automatically when shutter-release button is pressed halfway and fires as required.
- **👁️ (red-eye reduction):** Use for portraits. Red-eye reduction lamp lights before flash fires, reducing “red-eye.”
- **🚫 (off):** Flash does not fire even when lighting is poor or subject is back-lit.
- **SLOW (slow sync):** Shutter speed slows automatically to capture background lighting at night or under low light. Use to include background lighting in portraits.
- **REAR (rear-curtain sync):** Flash fires just before shutter closes, creating a stream of light behind moving light sources (below at right). If this icon is not displayed, flash will fire as the shutter opens (front-curtain sync; the effect this produces with moving light sources is shown below at left).



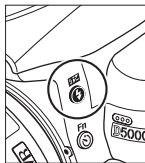
Front-curtain sync



Rear-curtain sync

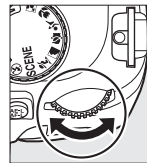
## Choosing a Flash Mode

The flash mode can also be selected by pressing the **⚡** button and rotating the command dial (in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, raise the flash before using the **⚡** button to choose the flash mode).

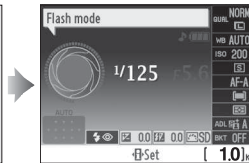


⚡ button

+



Command dial



Information display

## The Built-in Flash

For information on the lenses that can be used with the built-in flash, see page 196. Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows. The flash has a minimum range of 60 cm (2 ft.) and can not be used in the macro range of macro zoom lenses.

The shutter release may be briefly disabled to protect the flash after it has been used for several consecutive shots. The flash can be used again after a short pause.

## Shutter Speeds Available with the Built-in Flash

The following shutter speeds are available with the built-in flash when vibration reduction (VR) is not used.

Mode	Shutter speed
AUTO,  ,  ,  , <b>P</b> , <b>A</b>	1/200–1/60 s
, <b>11</b>	1/200–1/125 s
	1/200–1 s

Mode	Shutter speed
<b>S</b>	1/200–30 s
<b>M</b>	1/200–30 s, bulb

### Aperture, Sensitivity, and Flash Range

Flash range varies with sensitivity (ISO equivalency) and aperture.

Aperture at ISO equivalent of					Range	
200	400	800	1600	3200	m	ft.
1.4	2	2.8	4	5.6	1.0–12	3ft. 3in.–39ft. 4in.
2	2.8	4	5.6	8	0.7–8.5	2ft. 4in.–27ft. 11in.
2.8	4	5.6	8	11	0.6–6.1	2ft.–20ft.
4	5.6	8	11	16	0.6–4.2	2ft.–13ft. 9in.
5.6	8	11	16	22	0.6–3.0	2ft.–9ft. 10in.
8	11	16	22	32	0.6–2.1	2ft.–6ft. 11in.
11	16	22	32	—	0.6–1.5	2ft.–4ft. 11in.
16	22	32	—	—	0.6–1.1	2ft.–3ft. 7in.
22	32	—	—	—	0.6–0.8	2ft.–2ft. 7in.

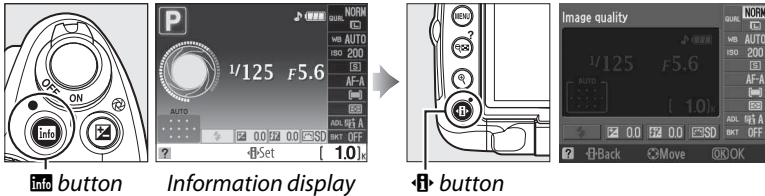


# ISO Sensitivity

“ISO sensitivity” is the digital equivalent of film speed. The higher the ISO sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures.

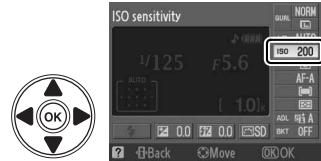
## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



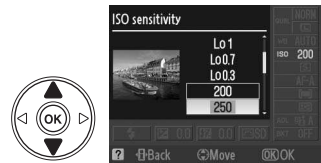
## 2 Display ISO sensitivity options.

Highlight the current ISO sensitivity in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose an ISO sensitivity.

Highlight an option and press **OK**. ISO sensitivity can be set between values roughly equivalent to ISO 200 and ISO 3200 in steps equivalent to  $1/3$  EV. For special situations, ISO sensitivity can be lowered below ISO 200 by about 0.3 EV (Lo 0.3, equivalent to ISO 160), 0.7 EV (Lo 0.7, equivalent to ISO 125), or 1.0 EV (Lo 1, equivalent to ISO 100), or raised above ISO 3200 by about 0.3 EV (Hi 0.3, equivalent to ISO 4000), 0.7 EV (Hi 0.7, equivalent to ISO 5000), or 1.0 EV (Hi 1, equivalent to ISO 6400). Auto and scene modes also offer an **AUTO** option, which allows the camera to set ISO sensitivity automatically in response to lighting conditions.





## **AUTO**

If the mode dial is rotated to **P**, **S**, **A**, or **M** after **AUTO** is selected for ISO sensitivity in another mode, the ISO sensitivity last selected in **P**, **S**, **A**, or **M** mode will be restored.

## **Hi 0.3–Hi 1**

Pictures taken at these settings are more likely to be subject to noise and color distortion.

## **Lo 0.3–Lo 1**

Use for larger apertures when lighting is bright. Contrast is slightly higher than normal; in most cases, ISO sensitivities of ISO 200 or above are recommended.

## **The Shooting Menu**

ISO sensitivity can also be adjusted using the **ISO sensitivity settings** option in the shooting menu (🗨 149).



## **See Also**

For information on enabling auto ISO sensitivity control in **P**, **S**, **A**, or **M** modes, see page 149. For information on using the **High ISO NR** option in the shooting menu to reduce noise at high ISO sensitivities, see page 151. For information on displaying ISO sensitivity in the viewfinder, see page 158. For information on using the **Fn** (📷) button and the command dial to select ISO sensitivity, see page 163.

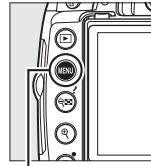


# Interval Timer Photography

The camera is equipped to take photographs automatically at preset intervals.

## 1 Select Interval timer shooting.

To display the menus, press the MENU button. Highlight the shooting menu tab (📷) and press ▶ to display the shooting menu, then highlight **Interval timer shooting** and press ▶.



MENU button



## 2 Select a starting trigger.

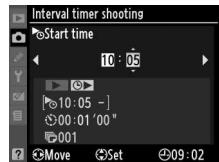
Choose from the following starting triggers:

- **To start shooting immediately**, highlight **Now** and press ▶. Shooting begins about 3 s after settings are completed (proceed to Step 4).
- **To choose a starting time**, highlight **Start time** and press ▶ (see Step 3).



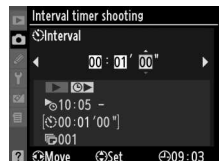
## 3 Choose a start time.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours or minutes; press ▲ or ▼ to change. The starting time is not displayed if **Now** is selected for **Choose start time**. Press ▶ to continue.



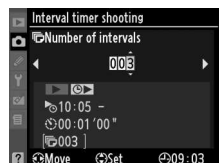
## 4 Choose an interval.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours, minutes, or seconds; press ▲ or ▼ to change. Choose an interval longer than the slowest anticipated shutter speed. Press ▶ to continue.



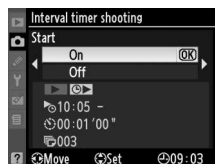
## 5 Choose the number of intervals.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight number of intervals; press ▲ or ▼ to change. Press ▶ to continue.



## 6 Start shooting.

Highlight **Start** > **On** and press **OK** (to return to the shooting menu without starting the interval timer, highlight **Start** > **Off** and press **OK**). The first shot will be taken at the specified starting time, or after about three seconds if **Now** was selected for **Choose start time** in Step 2. The self-timer lamp blinks while shooting is in progress; shooting will continue at the selected interval until all shots have been taken. Note that because shutter speed and the time needed to record the image to the memory card may vary from shot to shot, the interval between a shot being recorded and the start of the next shot may vary.



### ✓ Before Shooting

Before beginning interval timer photography, take a test shot at current settings and view the results in the monitor. To ensure that shooting starts at the desired time, check that the camera clock is correctly set (20). Settings can not be changed while interval timer photography is in progress.

Use of a tripod is recommended. Mount the camera on a tripod before shooting begins.

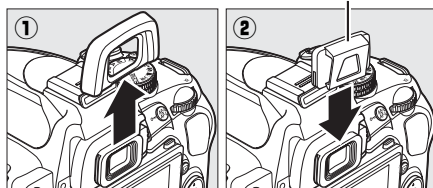
To ensure that shooting is not interrupted, be sure the EN-EL9a battery is fully charged or use an optional EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector.

### ✓ Bracketing

Bracketing can not be used with interval timer shooting.

### ✎ Cover the Viewfinder

Before starting the interval timer, remove the rubber eyecup (1) and insert the supplied DK-5 eyepiece cap as shown (2). This prevents light entering via the viewfinder interfering with exposure. Hold the camera firmly when removing the eyepiece cup.



### ✎ Release Mode

Regardless of the mode selected, the camera automatically takes one photograph at each interval; the self-timer and remote control can not be used. Camera noise is reduced in quiet shutter-release mode.

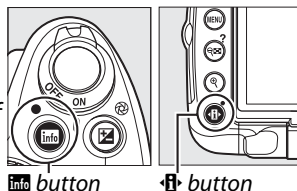
### ✎ Interrupting Interval Timer Shooting

To interrupt interval timer shooting, turn the camera off or rotate the mode dial to another position. Returning the monitor to the storage position does not interrupt interval timer shooting.



# Two-Button Reset

The camera settings listed below can be restored to default values by holding the **Info** and **Fn** buttons down together for more than two seconds (these buttons are marked by a green dot). The information display turns off briefly while settings are reset.



Option	Default
Image quality (☞ 62)	JPEG normal
Image size (☞ 64)	Large
White balance (☞ 96)	Auto
Fine tuning (☞ 98)	0
ISO sensitivity (☞ 74)	
Auto and scene modes	AUTO
<b>P, S, A, M</b>	200
Release mode (☞ 65)	Single frame
Focus mode (☞ 54)	AF-A
Live view autofocus (☞ 43)	
	Face priority
	Wide area
	Normal area
AF-area mode (☞ 56)	
	Single point
	Dynamic area
	Auto-area

Option	Default
Focus point (☞ 58) <sup>1</sup>	Center
Metering (☞ 88)	Matrix
<b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button hold (☞ 89)	Off
Active D-Lighting (☞ 94)	Auto
Bracketing (☞ 103)	Off
Picture Control modifications (☞ 106) <sup>2</sup>	None
Flash compensation (☞ 92)	Off
Exposure compensation (☞ 90)	Off
Flash mode (☞ 71)	
	Auto
	Auto+red-eye reduction
	Auto slow sync
	Fill flash
Flexible program (☞ 81)	Off

1 Focus point not displayed if **Auto-area** is selected for **AF-area mode**.  
 2 Current Picture Control only.

## Live View

Two-button reset is not available in live view.



# P, S, A, and M Modes

**P, S, A,** and **M** modes offer control over a variety of advanced settings, including shutter speed and aperture, metering, flash compensation, and white balance.

<b>Shutter Speed and Aperture</b> .....	<b>80</b>
Mode P (Programmed Auto) .....	81
Mode S (Shutter-Priority Auto) .....	82
Mode A (Aperture-Priority Auto) .....	83
Mode M (Manual) .....	84
Long Time-Exposures (M Mode Only) .....	86
<b>Exposure</b> .....	<b>88</b>
Metering .....	88
Autoexposure Lock .....	89
Exposure Compensation .....	90
Flash Compensation .....	92
Active D-Lighting .....	94
<b>White Balance</b> .....	<b>96</b>
Fine-Tuning White Balance .....	98
Preset Manual .....	99
<b>Bracketing</b> .....	<b>103</b>
<b>Picture Controls</b> .....	<b>106</b>
Selecting a Picture Control .....	106
Modifying Existing Picture Controls .....	108
Creating Custom Picture Controls .....	111
Sharing Custom Picture Controls .....	113
<b>The GP-1 GPS Unit</b> .....	<b>114</b>



# Shutter Speed and Aperture

P, S, A, and M modes offer different degrees of control over shutter speed and aperture:



Mode	Description
<b>P</b> Programmed auto (☰ 81)	Camera sets shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure. Recommended for snapshots and in other situations in which there is little time to adjust camera settings.
<b>S</b> Shutter-priority auto (☰ 82)	User chooses shutter speed; camera selects aperture for best results. Use to freeze or blur motion.
<b>A</b> Aperture-priority auto (☰ 83)	User chooses aperture; camera selects shutter speed for best results. Use to blur background or bring both foreground and background into focus.
<b>M</b> Manual (☰ 84)	User controls both shutter speed and aperture. Set shutter speed to “bulb” or “time” for long time-exposures.

## ✓ Lens Aperture Rings

When using a CPU lens equipped with an aperture ring (☰ 194), lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture (highest f-number). Type G lenses are not equipped with an aperture ring.

## ✍ Shutter Speed and Aperture

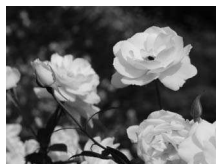
The same exposure can be achieved with different combinations of shutter speed and aperture. Fast shutter speeds and larger apertures freeze moving objects and soften background details, while slow shutter speeds and small apertures blur moving objects and bring out background details.



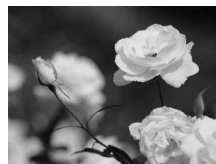
Fast shutter speed  
( $1/1,600$  s)



Slow shutter speed  
(1 s)



Small aperture (f/22)



Large aperture (f/5.6)

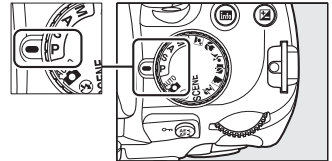
(Remember, the higher the f-number, the smaller the aperture.)

# Mode P (Programmed Auto)

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations. This mode is recommended for snapshots and other situations in which you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in programmed auto:


## 1 Rotate the mode dial to P.

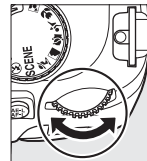
Mode dial



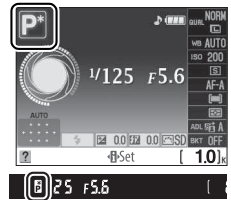
## 2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

### Flexible Program

In mode P, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the command dial ("flexible program"). Rotate the dial to the right for large apertures (low f-numbers) that blur background details or fast shutter speeds that "freeze" motion. Rotate the dial to the left for small apertures (high f-numbers) that increase depth of field or slow shutter speeds that blur motion. All combinations produce the same exposure. While flexible program is in effect, a  (P) indicator appears in the viewfinder and information display. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the command dial until the indicator is no longer displayed, choose another mode, or turn the camera off.



Command dial



### The Exposure Program

See page 216 for information on the built-in exposure program.



# Mode S (Shutter-Priority Auto)

In shutter-priority auto, you choose the shutter speed while the camera automatically selects the aperture that will produce the optimal exposure. Use slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving subjects, fast shutter speeds to “freeze” motion.



*Fast shutter speed ( $1/1,600$  s)*

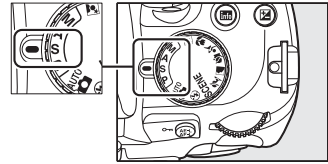


*Slow shutter speed (1 s)*

To take photographs in shutter-priority auto:

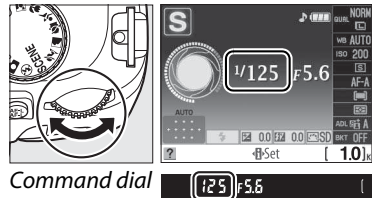
## 1 Rotate the mode dial to S.

*Mode dial*



## 2 Choose a shutter speed.

Shutter speed is shown in the viewfinder and information display. Rotate the command dial to choose the desired shutter speed from values between 30 s and  $1/4,000$  s.



## 3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.



# Mode A (Aperture-Priority Auto)

In aperture-priority auto, you choose the aperture while the camera automatically selects the shutter speed that will produce the optimal exposure. Large apertures (low f-numbers) reduce depth of field, blurring objects behind and in front of the main subject. Small apertures (high f-numbers) increase depth of field, bringing out details in the background and foreground. Short field depths are generally used in portraits to blur background details, long field depths in landscape photographs to bring the foreground and background into focus.



*Small aperture (f/22)*

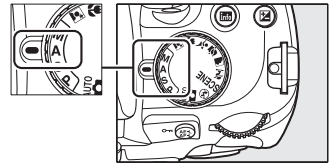


*Large aperture (f/5.6)*

To take photographs in aperture-priority auto:

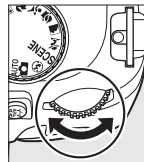
## 1 Rotate the mode dial to A.

*Mode dial*

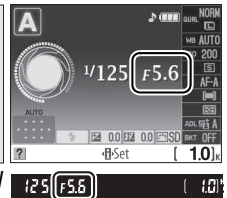


## 2 Choose an aperture.

Aperture is shown in the viewfinder and information display. Rotate the command dial to choose the desired aperture from values between the minimum and maximum for the lens.



*Command dial*

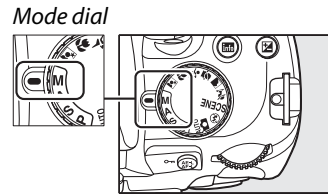


## 3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.


# Mode M (Manual)

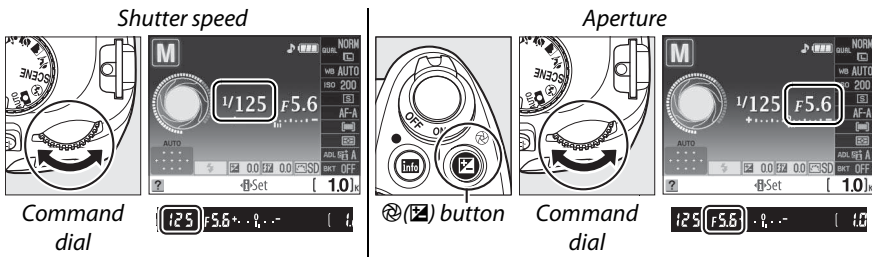
In manual exposure mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in manual exposure mode:

## 1 Rotate the mode dial to M.




## 2 Choose aperture and shutter speed.

Checking the exposure indicator (□ 85), adjust shutter speed and aperture. Shutter speed is selected by rotating the command dial: choose from values between 30 s and  $1/4,000$  s or select "bulb" to hold the shutter open indefinitely for a long time-exposure (□ 86). Aperture is selected by pressing the  button and rotating the command dial: choose from values between the minimum and maximum for the lens. Shutter speed and aperture are shown in the viewfinder and information display.






## 3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

### **The Exposure Indicator**

If a CPU lens is attached and a shutter speed other than “bulb” or “time” is selected, the exposure indicator in the viewfinder and information display shows whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings. Depending on the option chosen for Custom Setting b1 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**;  156), the amount of under- or over-exposure is shown in increments of  $\frac{1}{3}$  EV or  $\frac{1}{2}$  EV. If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, the indicator will flash.

Custom Setting b1 set to 1/3 step		
Optimal exposure	Underexposed by $\frac{1}{3}$ EV	Overexposed by over 2 EV
+ . . 0   . . -	+ . . 0   . . -	+ . . 0   . . -

### **Reverse Indicators**

If  ( + 0 - ) (the default setting) is selected for Custom Setting f5 (**Reverse indicators**,  164), the exposure indicators in the viewfinder and information display are displayed with positive values on the left and negative values on the right. Select  ( - 0 + ) to display negative values on the left and positive values on the right.



## ■ ■ Long Time-Exposures (M Mode Only)

Shutter speeds of “bulb” and “time” can be used for long time-exposure photographs of moving lights, the stars, night scenery, or fireworks. To prevent blurring caused by camera shake, use a tripod and an optional remote control or remote cord (☐ 203).



Length of exposure: 35 s  
Aperture: f/25

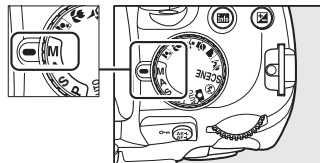
Shutter speed	Description
<b>Bulb</b>	Shutter remains open while shutter-release button is held down. Tripod and optional MC-DC2 remote cord are recommended to prevent blur.
<b>Time</b>	Optional ML-L3 wireless remote control required (☐ 203). Shutter opens when shutter-release button on remote control is pressed and remains open for thirty minutes or until shutter-release button is pressed a second time.

### 1 Ready the camera.

Mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface. To prevent loss of power before the exposure is complete, use a fully charged EN-EL9a battery or an optional EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector. Note that noise may be present in long exposures; before shooting, choose **On** for the **Long exp. NR** option in the shooting menu (☐ 148). If you are using an optional remote cord, attach it to the camera.

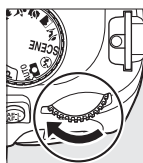
### 2 Rotate the mode dial to M.

Mode dial

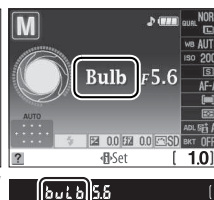


### 3 Choose a shutter speed.

Rotate the command dial until “Bulb” (b u l b) appears in the viewfinder or information display. For a shutter speed of “Time” (- -), select delayed remote or quick-response remote mode after choosing the shutter speed (☐ 65).



Command dial



---

## 4 Open the shutter.

**Bulb:** After focusing, press the shutter-release button on the camera or remote cord all the way down. Keep the shutter-release button pressed until the exposure is complete. If you are using a remote cord, see the manual provided with the product for more information.

**Time:** Press the shutter-release button on the remote control all the way down. The shutter will open immediately (quick-response remote) or two seconds after the shutter-release button is pressed (delayed remote) and remain open until the button is pressed a second time.

---

## 5 Close the shutter.

**Bulb:** Take your finger off the shutter-release button.

**Time:** Press the shutter-release button on the remote control all the way down. Shooting ends automatically after thirty minutes.



### **Self-timer Mode**

In self-timer mode, a shutter speed of "Bulb" is equivalent to approximately  $1/10$  s.



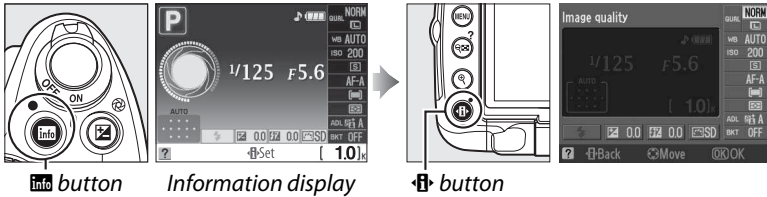
# Exposure

## Metering

Choose how the camera sets exposure in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes (in other modes, the camera selects the metering method automatically).

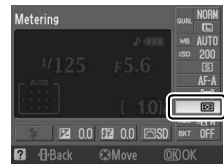
### 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



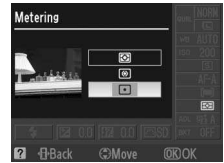
### 2 Display metering options.




Highlight the current metering method in the information display and press **OK**.



### 3 Choose a metering method.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.



Method	Description
 <b>Matrix</b>	Produces natural results in most situations. Camera uses 420-pixel RGB sensor to meter a wide area of the frame and set exposure according to tone distribution, color, composition, and, with type G or D lenses (□ 194), range information (3D color matrix metering II; with other CPU lenses, camera uses color matrix metering II, which does not include 3D range information).
 <b>Center-weighted</b>	Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to center area. Classic meter for portraits; recommended when using filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1x.
 <b>Spot</b>	Camera meters current focus point; use to meter off-center subjects (if <b>Auto-area</b> is selected for AF-area mode as described on page 56, camera will meter center focus point). Ensures that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker.

# Autoexposure Lock

Use autoexposure lock to recompose photographs after metering exposure:

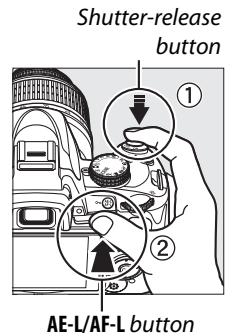
## 1 Select center-weighted (☉) or spot (□) metering (☐ 88).

Matrix metering (☉) will not produce the desired results.



## 2 Lock exposure.

Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus point, press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock focus and exposure.



While exposure lock is in effect, an **AE-L** indicator will appear in the viewfinder.



## 3 Recompose the photograph.

Keeping the **AE-L/AF-L** button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.

### Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture

While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be adjusted without altering the metered value for exposure:

Mode	Setting
Programmed auto	Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; ☐ 81)
Shutter-priority auto	Shutter speed
Aperture-priority auto	Aperture

The metering method itself can not be changed while exposure lock is in effect.

### See Also

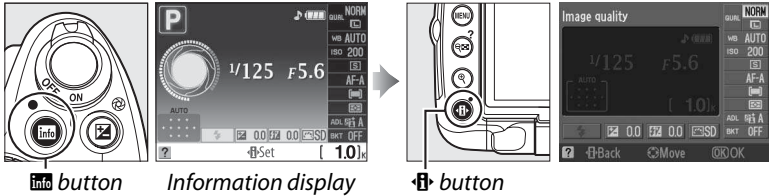
If **On** is selected for Custom Setting c1 (**Shutter-release button AE-L**, ☐ 156), exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. For information on changing the role of the **AE-L/AF-L** button, see Custom Setting f2 (**Assign AE-L/AF-L button**, ☐ 164).

# Exposure Compensation

Exposure compensation is used to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera, making pictures brighter or darker. It is most effective when used with center-weighted or spot metering (☐ 88).

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display exposure compensation options.

Highlight exposure compensation in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose a value.


Highlight a value and press **OK**. Exposure compensation can be set to values between  $-5$  EV (underexposure) and  $+5$  EV (overexposure) in increments of  $1/3$  EV. In general, choose positive values to make the subject brighter, negative values to make it darker.

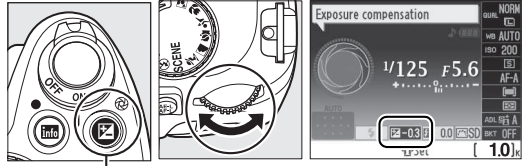


Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to  $\pm 0$ . Exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.



### **The Button**

Exposure compensation can also be set by pressing the  button and rotating the command dial. The selected value is shown in the viewfinder and information display.



 button    Command dial





### **Mode M**

In mode **M**, exposure compensation affects only the exposure indicator; shutter speed and aperture do not change.

### **Using a Flash**

When a flash is used, exposure compensation affects both background exposure and flash level.

### **See Also**

For information on choosing the size of the increments available for exposure compensation, see Custom Setting b1 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**,  156). For information on automatically varying exposure over a series of photographs to “bracket” a selected exposure compensation value, see “Bracketing” ( 103).

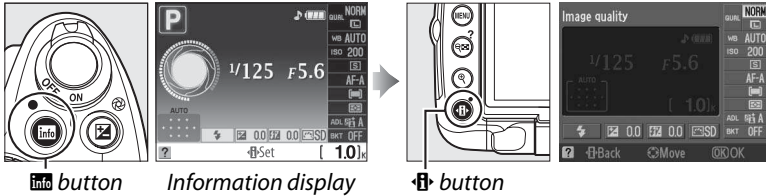


# Flash Compensation

Flash compensation is used to alter flash output from the level suggested by the camera, changing the brightness of the main subject relative to the background. Flash output can be increased to make the main subject appear brighter, or reduced to prevent unwanted highlights or reflections.

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display flash compensation options.

Highlight flash compensation in the information display and press **OK**.






## 3 Choose a value.

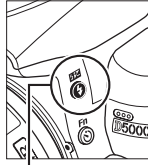
Highlight a value and press **OK**. Flash compensation can be set to values between  $-3$  EV (darker) and  $+1$  EV (brighter) in increments of  $1/3$  EV. In general, choose positive values to make the subject brighter, negative values to make it darker.





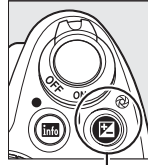
Normal flash output can be restored by setting flash compensation to  $\pm 0.0$ . Flash compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

### **The () and Buttons**

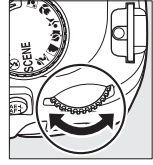
Flash compensation can also be set by rotating the command dial while pressing the  () and  buttons. The selected value is shown in the viewfinder and information display.



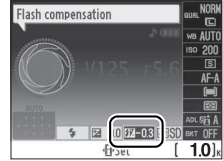
 () button



 button



Command dial




-0.3 EV

+1 EV

### **Optional Flash Units**

Flash compensation is also available with an optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, or SB-R200 flash units.

### **Exposure Increments**

For information on choosing the size of the increments available when setting flash compensation, see Custom Setting b1 (**EV steps for exposure cntrl.**,  156).



# Active D-Lighting

Active D-Lighting preserves details in highlights and shadows, creating photographs with natural contrast. Use for high contrast scenes, for example when photographing brightly lit outdoor scenery through a door or window or taking pictures of shaded subjects on a sunny day. It is most effective when used with matrix metering (☒; □ 88).



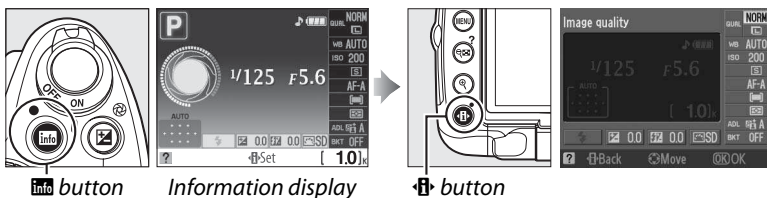
Active D-Lighting: OFF Off



Active D-Lighting: 暗 A Auto

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Right Arrow** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 2 Display Active D-Lighting options.

Highlight Active D-Lighting in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose an option.

Highlight **暗 A Auto**, **暗 H Extra high**, **暗 H High**, **暗 N Normal**, **暗 L Low**, or **OFF Off** and press **OK**.



## ✓ Active D-Lighting

Noise (graininess, banding, and mottling) may appear in photographs taken with Active D-Lighting at high ISO sensitivities. If center-weighted or spot metering is selected, settings other than OFF **Off** are equivalent to 暗 N **Normal**. In mode M, an Active D-Lighting setting of 暗 A **Auto** is equivalent to 暗 N **Normal**.

## ✓ “Active D-Lighting” Versus “D-Lighting”

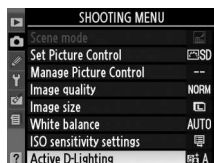
The **Active D-Lighting** option in the shooting menu adjusts exposure before shooting to optimize the dynamic range, while the **D-Lighting** option in the retouch menu (☰ 174) optimizes dynamic range in images after shooting.

## ✎ The Shooting Menu

Active D-Lighting can also be adjusted using the **Active D-Lighting** option in the shooting menu (☰ 148).

## ✎ See Also

For information on using the Fn (☺) button and command dial to select Active D-Lighting, see page 163. For information on automatically varying Active D-Lighting over two photographs (one with Active D-Lighting off, the second with the current setting for Active-D-Lighting), see page 103.

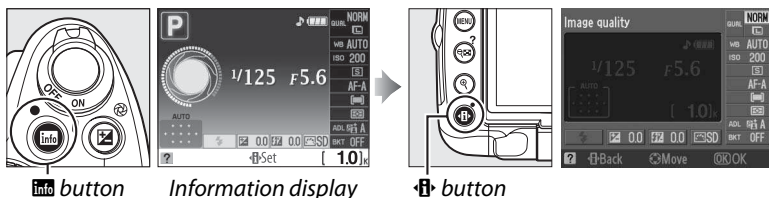


# White Balance

White balance ensures that colors are unaffected by the color of the light source. Auto white balance is recommended for most light sources; in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, other values can be selected if necessary according to the type of source:

## 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Right Arrow** button to place the cursor in the information display.



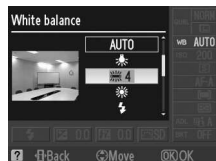
## 2 Display white balance options.

Highlight the current white balance setting in the information display and press **OK**.



## 3 Choose a white balance option.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.



**AUTO** Auto


 Incandescent

 Fluorescent ( 97 )

 Direct sunlight

 Flash

 Cloudy


 Shade

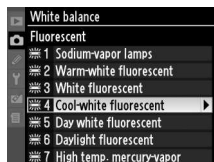
**PRE** Preset manual ( 99 )

## The Shooting Menu

White balance can be selected using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu (□ 148), which also can be used to fine-tune white balance (□ 98) or measure a value for preset white balance (□ 99).















The  **Fluorescent** option in the **White balance** menu can be used to select the light source from the bulb types shown at right.



## Color Temperature

The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5,000–5,500 K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue. The camera white balance options are adapted to the following color temperatures:

-  (sodium-vapor lamps): **2,700 K**
-  (incandescent)/  
   (warm-white fluorescent): **3,000 K**
-  (white fluorescent): **3,700 K**
-  (cool-white fluorescent): **4,200 K**
-  (day white fluorescent): **5,000 K**
-  (direct sunlight): **5,200 K**
-  (flash): **5,400 K**
-  (cloudy): **6,000 K**
-  (daylight fluorescent): **6,500 K**
-  (high temp. mercury-vapor): **7,200 K**
-  (shade): **8,000 K**

## The Fn Button

For information on using the **Fn** (☺) button and the command dial for white balance, see page □ 163.

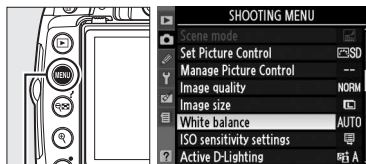


# Fine-Tuning White Balance

White balance can be “fine tuned” to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate color cast into an image. White balance is fine tuned using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu.

## 1 Display white balance options.

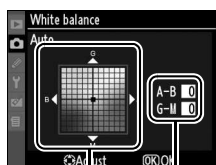
To display the menus, press the **MENU** button. Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu and press **▶** to display white balance options.



MENU button

## 2 Select a white balance option.

Highlight an option other than **Preset manual** and press **▶** (if **Fluorescent** is selected, highlight a lighting type and press **▶**). The fine-tuning options shown at right will be displayed. Fine-tuning is not available with **Preset manual** white balance.

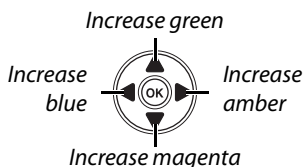


Coordinates


Adjustment

## 3 Fine tune white balance.

Use the multi selector to fine-tune white balance.



### White Balance Fine Tuning

The colors on the fine-tuning axes are relative, not absolute. For example, moving the cursor to **B** (blue) when a “warm” setting such as  (incandescent) is selected will make photographs slightly “colder” but will not actually make them blue.

## 4 Press **OK**.



# Preset Manual

Preset manual is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Two methods are available for setting preset white balance:

Method	Description
Measure	Neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photo and white balance measured by camera (see below).
Use photo	White balance is copied from photo on memory card (102).

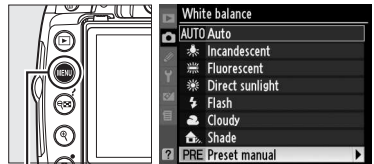
## ■ Measuring a Value for Preset White Balance

### 1 Light a reference object.

Place a neutral gray or white object under the lighting that will be used in the final photograph.

### 2 Display white balance options.

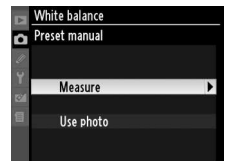
To display the menus, press the MENU button. Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu and press ► to display white balance options.



MENU button

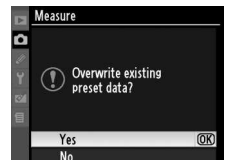
### 3 Select Preset manual.

Highlight **Preset manual** and press ►.

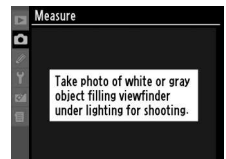


### 4 Select Measure.

Highlight **Measure** and press ►. The menu shown at right will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press OK.



The message shown at right will be displayed before the camera enters preset measurement mode.





### ✔ **Measuring Preset White Balance**

If no operations are performed while the displays are flashing, direct measurement mode will end when the exposure meters turn off. The auto meter-off delay can be changed using Custom Setting c2 (**Auto off timers**; □ 157). The default setting is eight seconds.

### ✔ **Preset White Balance**

The camera can store only one value for preset white balance at a time; the existing value will be replaced when a new value is measured. When shooting in mode **M**, check the exposure indicator to ensure that the subject is neither under- nor over-exposed (□ 85).

### ✎ **Other Methods for Measuring Preset White Balance**

To enter preset measurement mode (see above) after selecting preset white balance in the information display (□ 96), press **OK** for a few seconds. If white balance has been assigned to the **Fn** (☺) button (□ 163) and preset white balance selected by pressing the **Fn** (☺) button and rotating the command dial, the camera will also enter preset measurement mode if the **Fn** (☺) button is pressed for a few seconds.

### ✎ **Studio Settings**

In studio settings, a standard gray panel can be used as a reference object when measuring preset white balance.

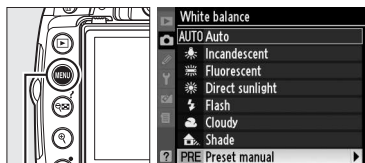


## ■ Copying White Balance from a Photograph

Follow the steps below to copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card.

### 1 Select Preset manual.

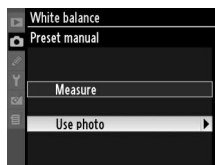
To display the menus, press the **MENU** button. Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu and press **▶** to display white balance options. Highlight **Preset manual** and press **▶**.



MENU button

### 2 Select Use photo.

Highlight **Use photo** and press **▶**.



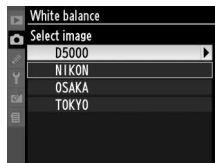
### 3 Choose Select image.

Highlight **Select image** and press **▶** (to skip the remaining steps and use the image last selected for preset white balance, select **This image**).



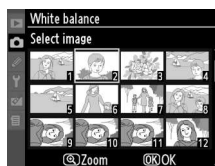
### 4 Choose a folder.

Highlight the folder containing the source image and press **▶**.



### 5 Highlight the source image.

To view the highlighted image full frame, press and hold the **Ⓜ** button.



### 6 Copy white balance.

Press **Ⓜ** to set preset white balance to the white balance value for the highlighted photograph.

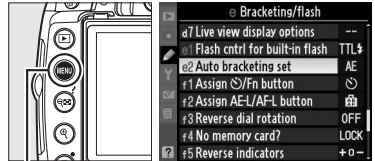


# Bracketing

Bracketing automatically varies exposure, Active D-Lighting, or white balance slightly with each shot, “bracketing” the current value. Choose in situations in which it is difficult to set exposure, Active D-Lighting, or white balance and there is not time to check results and adjust settings with each shot, or to experiment with different settings for the same subject.

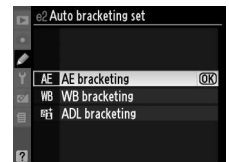
## 1 Choose a bracketing option.

Press the **MENU** button to display the menus, highlight Custom Setting e2 (**Auto bracketing set**), and press **▶**.



MENU button

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.



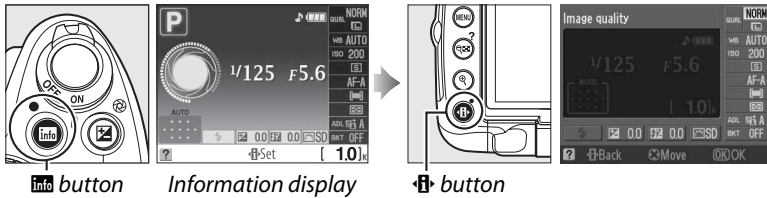
Option	Description
<b>AE AE bracketing</b>	Vary exposure over a series of three photographs.
<b>WB WB bracketing</b>	Each time the shutter is released, the camera creates three images, each with a different white balance. Not available at image quality settings that include NEF (RAW).
<b>ADL ADL bracketing</b>	Take one photograph with Active D-Lighting off, the other at the current setting for Active D-Lighting.

### Exposure Bracketing

The camera modifies exposure by varying shutter speed and aperture (mode **P**), aperture (mode **S**), or shutter speed (modes **A** and **M**). If **On** is selected for ISO sensitivity auto control (☐ 149) in modes **P**, **S**, and **A**, the camera will automatically vary ISO sensitivity for optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded. In mode **M**, shutter speed will only be changed after the camera has adjusted ISO sensitivity.

## 2 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **info** button. Press the **Fn** button to place the cursor in the information display.



## 3 Display bracketing options.

Highlight the indicator for the selected bracketing mode and press **OK**.



## 4 Select a bracketing increment.

**AE bracketing:** Highlight a bracketing increment and press **OK**. Choose from values between 0.3 EV (**AE 0.3**) and 2.0 EV (**AE 2.0**).



**WB bracketing:** Highlight a bracketing increment and press **OK**. Choose from increments of 1 (**WB 1**), 2 (**WB 2**), and 3 (**WB 3**).

**ADL bracketing:** Highlight **ADL** and press **OK**.

### **The Fn (Fn) Button**

Bracketing increment selection can also be assigned to the **Fn** (Fn) button (163).

## 5 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.



**AE bracketing:** The camera will vary exposure with each shot. The first shot will be taken at the value currently selected for exposure compensation. The bracketing increment will be subtracted from the current value in the second shot and added in the third shot, “bracketing” the current value. The modified values can be higher or lower than the maximum and minimum values for exposure compensation and are reflected in the values shown for shutter speed and aperture. Bracketing ends automatically after the third shot is taken.



1st shot: unmodified






2nd shot: exposure reduced



3rd shot: exposure increased

### The Bracketing Progress Indicator

During AE bracketing, progress is shown by the bracketing indicator in the information display:


- : Camera ready to take first shot.
- : Camera ready to take second shot.
- : Camera ready to take third shot.



**WB bracketing:** Each shot is processed to create three copies, one at the current white balance setting, one with increased amber, and one with increased blue.

If there is not enough space available on the memory card to record three images, the exposure count display in the viewfinder will flash. Shooting can begin when a new memory card is inserted.



**ADL bracketing:** The first shot after bracketing is activated is taken with Active D-Lighting off, the second at the current Active D-Lighting setting ( 94; if Active D-Lighting is off, the second shot will be taken with Active D-Lighting set to **Auto**). Bracketing ends automatically after the second shot.

In continuous release mode, shooting will pause after each bracketing cycle. If the camera is turned off before all shots in the bracketing sequence have been taken, bracketing will resume from the next shot in the sequence when the camera is turned on. To cancel bracketing before all frames have been recorded, rotate the mode dial to a setting other than **P**, **S**, **A**, or **M**.

# Picture Controls

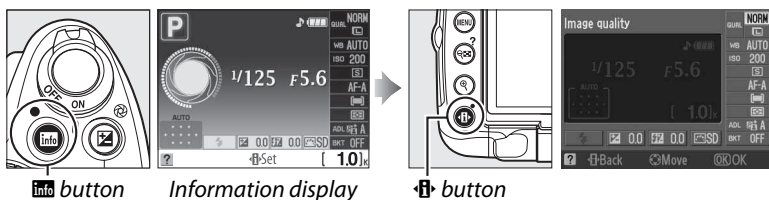
Nikon's unique Picture Control system makes it possible to share image processing settings, including sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue, among compatible devices and software.

## Selecting a Picture Control

The camera offers six preset Picture Controls. In **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, you can choose a Picture Control according to the subject or type of scene (in other modes, the camera selects a Picture Control automatically).

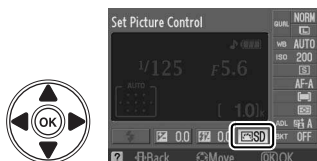
### 1 Place the cursor in the information display.

If shooting information is not displayed in the monitor, press the **Info** button. Press the **Info** button to place the cursor in the information display.



### 2 Display preset Picture Controls.

Highlight the current Picture Control in the information display and press **OK**.











### 3 Choose a Picture Control.

Highlight one of the following options and press

 **OK**.



Option	Description
 <b>Standard</b>	Standard processing for balanced results. Recommended for most situations.
 <b>Neutral</b>	Minimal processing for natural results. Choose for photographs that will later be extensively processed or retouched.
 <b>Vivid</b>	Pictures are enhanced for a vivid, photoprint effect. Choose for photographs that emphasize primary colors.
 <b>Monochrome</b>	Take monochrome photographs.
 <b>Portrait</b>	Process portraits for skin with natural texture and a rounded feel.
 <b>Landscape</b>	Produces vibrant landscapes and cityscapes.

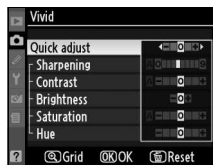
#### **The Shooting Menu**

Picture Controls can also be selected and modified from the shooting menu (148). **Set Picture Control** can be used to modify existing Picture Controls (108). Choose **Manage Picture Control** to create custom Picture Controls (111) or copy custom Picture Controls to a memory card to be shared among compatible devices and software (113).



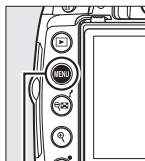
# Modifying Existing Picture Controls

Existing preset or custom Picture Controls can be modified to suit the scene or the user's creative intent. Choose a balanced combination of settings using **Quick adjust**, or make manual adjustments to individual settings.



## 1 Display the Picture Control menu.

To display the menus, press the MENU button. Highlight **Set Picture Control** in the shooting menu and press ►.

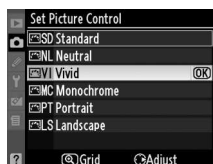


MENU button




## 2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight the desired Picture Control and press ►.



## 3 Adjust settings.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired setting and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a value (□ 109). Repeat this step until all settings have been adjusted, or select **Quick adjust** to choose a preset combination of settings. Default settings can be restored by pressing the  button.



## 4 Press .



### Modifications to Original Picture Controls

Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings are indicated by an asterisk ("\*").



## Picture Control Settings



Option	Description	
<b>Quick adjust</b>	Choose from options between <b>-2</b> and <b>+2</b> to reduce or exaggerate the effect of the selected Picture Control (note that this resets all manual adjustments). For example, choosing positive values for <b>Vivid</b> makes pictures more vivid. Not available with <b>Neutral</b> , <b>Monochrome</b> , or custom Picture Controls.	
<b>Manual adjustments</b> (all Picture Controls)	<b>Sharpening</b>	Control the sharpness of outlines. Select <b>A</b> to adjust sharpening automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between <b>0</b> (no sharpening) and <b>9</b> (the higher the value, the greater the sharpening).
	<b>Contrast</b>	Select <b>A</b> to adjust contrast automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between <b>-3</b> and <b>+3</b> (choose lower values to prevent highlights in portrait subjects from being “washed out” in direct sunlight, higher values to preserve detail in misty landscapes and other low-contrast subjects). Not available when Active D-Lighting (☐ 94) is on; reset if Active D-Lighting is activated after value is changed.
	<b>Brightness</b>	Choose <b>-1</b> for reduced brightness, <b>+1</b> for enhanced brightness. Does not affect exposure. Not available when Active D-Lighting (☐ 94) is on; reset if Active D-Lighting is activated after value is changed.
<b>Manual adjustments</b> (non-monochrome only)	<b>Saturation</b>	Control the vividness of colors. Select <b>A</b> to adjust saturation automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between <b>-3</b> and <b>+3</b> (lower values reduce saturation and higher values increase it).
	<b>Hue</b>	Choose negative values (to a minimum of <b>-3</b> ) to make reds more purple, blues more green, and greens more yellow, positive values (up to <b>+3</b> ) to make reds more orange, greens more blue, and blues more purple.
<b>Manual adjustments</b> (monochrome only)	<b>Filter effects</b>	Simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. Choose from <b>OFF</b> (the default setting), yellow, orange, red, and green (☐ 110).
	<b>Toning</b>	Choose the tint used in monochrome photographs from <b>B&amp;W</b> (black-and-white), <b>Sepia</b> , <b>Cyanotype</b> (blue-tinted monochrome), <b>Red</b> , <b>Yellow</b> , <b>Green</b> , <b>Blue Green</b> , <b>Blue</b> , <b>Purple Blue</b> , <b>Red Purple</b> (☐ 110).

### “A” (Auto)

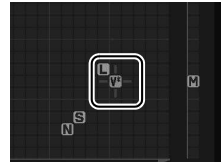
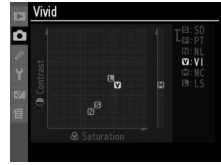
Results for auto contrast and saturation vary with exposure and the position of the subject in the frame.



## The Picture Control Grid

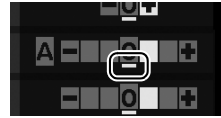
Pressing the  button in Step 3 displays a Picture Control grid showing the contrast and saturation for the selected Picture Control in relation to the other Picture Controls (only contrast is displayed when **Monochrome** is selected). Release the  button to return to the Picture Control menu.

The icons for Picture Controls that use auto contrast and saturation are displayed in green in the Picture Control grid, and lines appear parallel to the axes of the grid.



## Previous Settings

The line under the value display in the Picture Control setting menu indicates the previous value for the setting. Use this as a reference when adjusting settings.






## Filter Effects (Monochrome Only)

The options in this menu simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. The following filter effects are available:

Option	Description
<b>Y</b> Yellow	Enhances contrast. Can be used to tone down the brightness of the sky in landscape photographs. Orange produces more contrast than yellow, red more contrast than orange.
<b>O</b> Orange	
<b>R</b> Red	
<b>G</b> Green	Softens skin tones. Can be used for portraits.

Note that the effects achieved with **Filter effects** are more pronounced than those produced by physical glass filters.

## Toning (Monochrome Only)

Pressing  when **Toning** is selected displays saturation options. Press  or  to adjust saturation. Saturation control is not available when **B&W** (black-and-white) is selected.

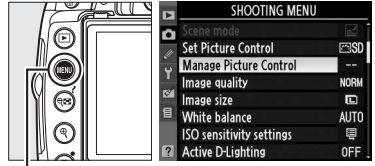


# Creating Custom Picture Controls

The preset Picture Controls supplied with the camera can be modified and saved as custom Picture Controls.

## 1 Select Manage Picture Control.

To display the menus, press the MENU button. Highlight **Manage Picture Control** in the shooting menu and press ►.



MENU button

## 2 Select Save/edit.

Highlight **Save/edit** and press ►.




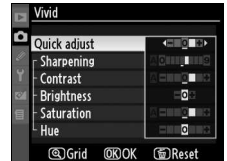
## 3 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight an existing Picture Control and press ►, or press OK to proceed to step 5 and save a copy of the highlighted Picture Control without further modification.



## 4 Edit the selected Picture Control.

See page 109 for more information. To abandon any changes and start over, press the  button. Press OK when settings are complete.



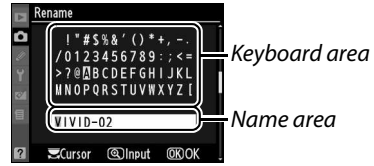
## 5 Select a destination.

Highlight a destination for the custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ►.



## 6 Name the Picture Control.

The text-entry dialog shown at right will be displayed. By default, new Picture Controls are named by adding a two-digit number (assigned automatically) to the name of the existing Picture Control. This name can be edited to create a new name of up to 19 characters as described on page 152.

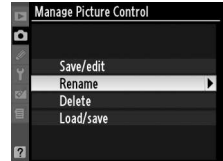


The new Picture Control will appear in the Picture Control list.



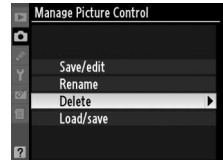
### Manage Picture Control > Rename

Custom Picture Controls can be renamed at any time using the **Rename** option in the **Manage Picture Control** menu.



### Manage Picture Control > Delete

The **Delete** option in the **Manage Picture Control** menu can be used to delete selected custom Picture Controls when they are no longer needed.



### Custom Picture Controls

The edit display for custom Picture Controls contains the same options as the original preset Picture Control on which it is based. The original control is shown by an icon in the top right corner of the display.

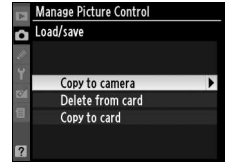


# Sharing Custom Picture Controls

Custom Picture Controls created using the Picture Control Utility available with ViewNX or optional software such as Capture NX 2 can be copied to a memory card and loaded into the camera, or custom Picture Controls created with the camera can be copied to the memory card to be used in compatible cameras and software and then deleted when no longer needed.

To copy custom Picture Controls to or from the memory card, or to delete Custom Picture Controls from the memory card, highlight **Load/Save** in the **Manage Picture Control** menu and press ►. The following options will be displayed:

- **Copy to camera:** Copy custom Picture Controls from the memory card to custom Picture Controls C-1 through C-9 on the camera and name them as desired.
- **Delete from card:** Delete selected custom Picture Controls from the memory card. The confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed before a Picture Control is deleted; to delete the selected Picture Control, highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.
- **Copy to card:** Copy a custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) from the camera to a selected destination (1 through 99) on the memory card.

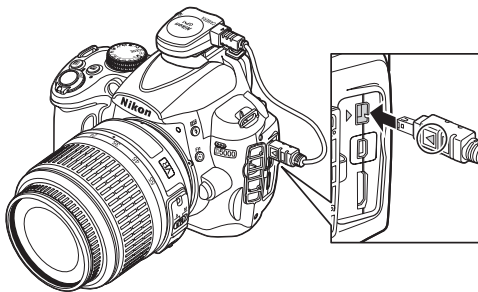


## Saving Custom Picture Controls

Up to 99 custom Picture Controls can be stored on the memory card at any one time. The memory card can only be used to store user-created custom Picture Controls. The preset Picture Controls supplied with the camera (**Standard, Neutral, Vivid, Monochrome, Portrait, and Landscape**) can not be copied to the memory card, renamed, or deleted.

# The GP-1 GPS Unit

The GP-1 GPS unit (available separately) can be connected to the camera's accessory terminal using the cable supplied with the GP-1, allowing information on the camera's current position to be recorded when photographs are taken. Turn the camera off before connecting the GP-1; for more information, see the GP-1 manual.



When the camera establishes communication with the GP-1, a **GPS** icon will appear in the information display. Photo information for pictures taken while the **GPS** icon is displayed will include an additional page of GPS data (☐ 121). GPS data are only recorded when the **GPS** icon is displayed; confirm that the icon appears in the information display before shooting (a flashing icon indicates that the GP-1 is searching for a signal; pictures taken while the icon is flashing do not include GPS data). If no data are received from the GP-1 for two seconds, the **GPS** icon will clear from the display and the camera will stop recording GPS information.



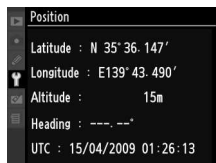
## ■ Setup Menu Options

The **GPS** item in the setup menu contains the options listed below.

- **Auto meter off:** Choose whether the exposure meters turn off automatically when the GP-1 is attached.

Option	Description
<b>Enable</b>	Exposure meters turn off automatically if no operations are performed for the time given in Custom Setting c2 ( <b>Auto off timers</b> ; ☐ 157). This reduces the drain on the battery, but GPS data may not be recorded if the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down without pausing.
<b>Disable</b>	Exposure meters do not turn off while the GP-1 is connected; GPS data will always be recorded.

- **Position:** This item is only available if the GP-1 is connected, when it displays the current latitude, longitude, altitude, and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) as reported by the GP-1.



### ☑ Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)

UTC data is provided by the GPS device and is independent of the camera clock.






# More on Playback

This chapter describes how to view photographs and details the operations that can be performed during playback.


<b>Full-Frame Playback</b> .....	<b>116</b>
Photo Information .....	117
<b>Thumbnail Playback</b> .....	<b>122</b>
<b>Calendar Playback</b> .....	<b>123</b>
<b>Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom</b> .....	<b>124</b>
<b>Protecting Photographs from Deletion</b> .....	<b>125</b>
<b>Deleting Photographs</b> .....	<b>126</b>
Full-Frame, Thumbnail, and Calendar Playback.....	126
The Playback Menu .....	127
<b>Slide Shows</b> .....	<b>129</b>



















# Full-Frame Playback

To play photographs back, press the  button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.

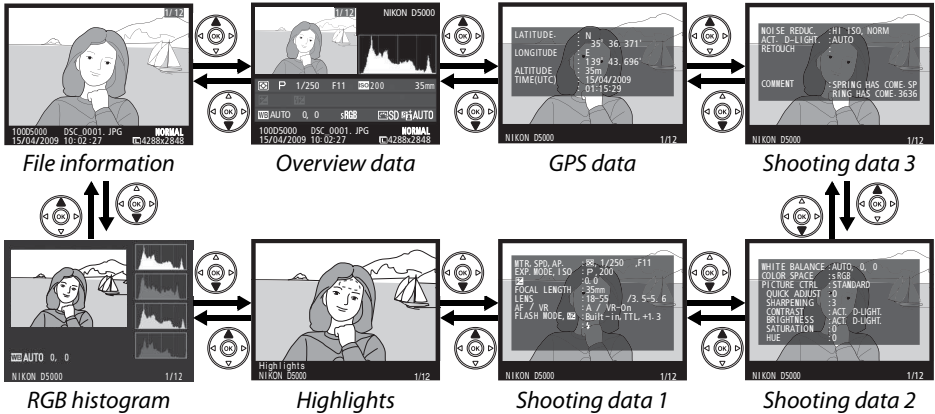


 button

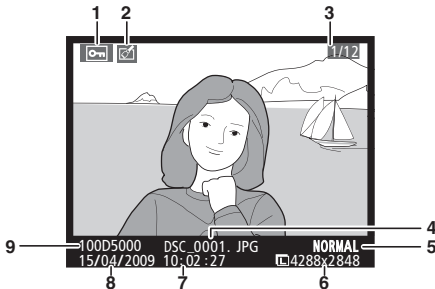
To	Use	Description
View additional photographs		Press  to view photographs in order recorded,  to view photographs in reverse order.
View photo information		Press  or  to view information about current photograph ( <a href="#">□ 117</a> ).
View thumbnails		See page 122 for more information on the thumbnail display.
Zoom in on photograph		See page 124 for more information on playback zoom.
Delete images		Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press  again to delete photo.
Change protect status		To protect image, or to remove protection from protected image, press  button ( <a href="#">□ 125</a> ).
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	<b>MENU</b>	See page 145 for more information.
Retouch photo or play movie		Create retouched copy of current photograph ( <a href="#">□ 174</a> ). If current picture is marked with  icon to show that it is a movie, pressing  starts movie playback ( <a href="#">□ 52</a> ).

# Photo Information

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in full-frame playback. Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through photo information as shown below. Note that shooting data, RGB histograms, and highlights are only displayed if corresponding option is selected for **Display mode** (📖 146). GPS data are only displayed if a GPS device was used when the photo was taken.

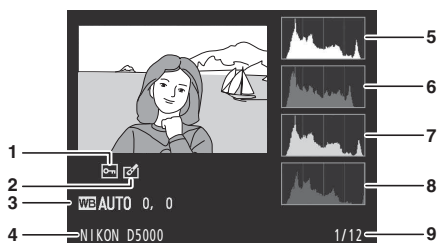


## File Information



1	Protect status.....	125
2	Retouch indicator.....	175
3	Frame number/total number of images	
4	File name.....	63
5	Image quality.....	62
6	Image size.....	64
7	Time of recording.....	20
8	Date of recording.....	20
9	Folder name.....	152

## ■ ■ RGB Histogram \*



- 1 Protect status ..... 125
- 2 Retouch indicator ..... 175
- 3 White balance ..... 96  
White balance fine-tuning ..... 98
- 4 Camera name
- 5 Histogram (RGB channel). In all histograms, horizontal axis gives pixel brightness, vertical axis number of pixels.
- 6 Histogram (red channel)
- 7 Histogram (green channel)
- 8 Histogram (blue channel)
- 9 Frame number/total number of images

\* Displayed only if **RGB histogram** is selected for **Display mode** (☐ 146).

### 🔍 Playback Zoom

To zoom in on the photograph when the histogram is displayed, press . Use the and buttons to zoom in and out and scroll the image with the multi selector. The histogram will be updated to show only the data for the portion of the image visible in the monitor.



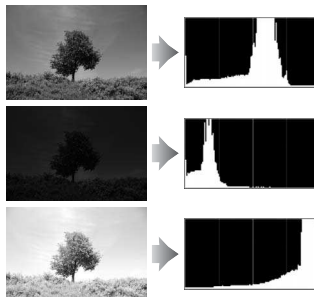
### 📊 Histograms

Camera histograms are intended as a guide only and may differ from those displayed in imaging applications. Some sample histograms are shown below:

If the image contains objects with a wide range of brightnesses, the distribution of tones will be relatively even.

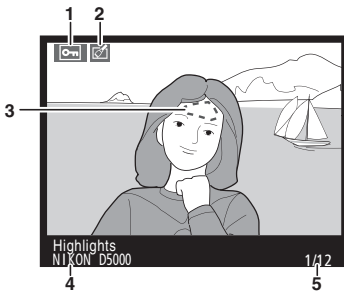
If the image is dark, tone distribution will be shifted to the left.

If the image is bright, tone distribution will be shifted to the right.



Increasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution of tones to the right, while decreasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution to the left. Histograms can provide a rough idea of overall exposure when bright ambient lighting makes it difficult to see photographs in the monitor.

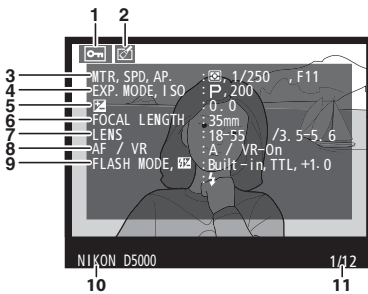
## ■ Highlights\*



1	Protect status.....	125
2	Retouch indicator.....	175
3	Image highlights	
4	Camera name	
5	Frame number/total number of images	

\* Displayed only if **Highlights** is selected for **Display mode** (☐ 146). Blinking areas indicate highlights.

## ■ Shooting Data Page 1<sup>1</sup>

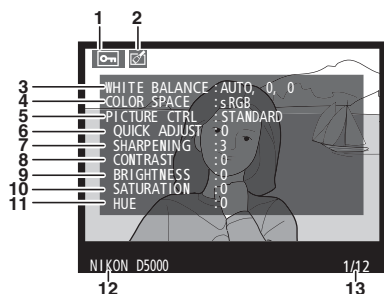


3	Metering.....	88
	Shutter speed .....	82, 84
	Aperture .....	83, 84
4	Shooting mode.....	28, 33, 80
	ISO sensitivity <sup>2</sup> .....	74
5	Exposure compensation.....	90
6	Focal length.....	197
7	Lens data	
8	Focus mode.....	54, 60
	Lens VR (vibration reduction) <sup>3</sup> .....	19
9	Flash mode.....	71
	Flash compensation .....	92
10	Camera name	
11	Frame number/total number of images	

1	Protect status.....	125
2	Retouch indicator .....	175

- 1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (☐ 146).
- 2 Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.
- 3 Displayed only if VR lens is attached.

## Shooting Data Page 2<sup>1</sup>



1	Protect status .....	125
2	Retouch indicator .....	175
3	White balance .....	96
	Color temperature.....	97
	White balance fine-tuning .....	98
	Preset manual.....	99

1 Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (□ 146).

2 **Standard, Vivid, Portrait, and Landscape** Picture Controls only.

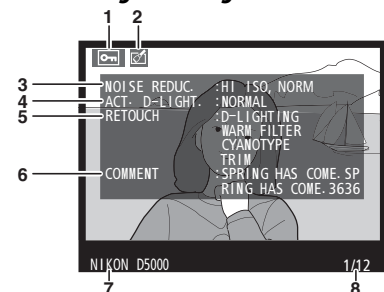
3 **Neutral, Monochrome**, and custom Picture Controls.

4 Not displayed with monochrome Picture Controls.

5 Monochrome Picture Controls only.

4	Color space.....	150
5	Picture Control.....	106
6	Quick adjust <sup>2</sup> .....	109
	Original Picture Control <sup>3</sup> .....	112
7	Sharpening.....	109
8	Contrast.....	109
9	Brightness.....	109
10	Saturation <sup>4</sup> .....	109
	Filter effects <sup>5</sup> .....	109
11	Hue <sup>4</sup> .....	109
	Toning <sup>5</sup> .....	109
12	Camera name	
13	Frame number/total number of images	

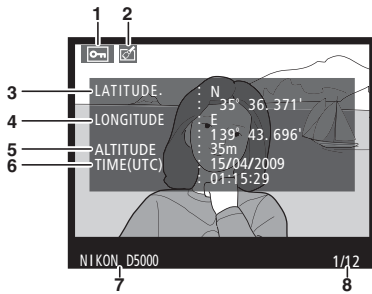
## Shooting Data Page 3<sup>\*</sup>



1	Protect status .....	125
2	Retouch indicator .....	175
3	High ISO NR .....	151
	Long exposure NR .....	151
4	Active D-Lighting.....	94
5	Retouch history .....	174
6	Image comment.....	169
7	Camera name	
8	Frame number/total number of images	

\* Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (□ 146).

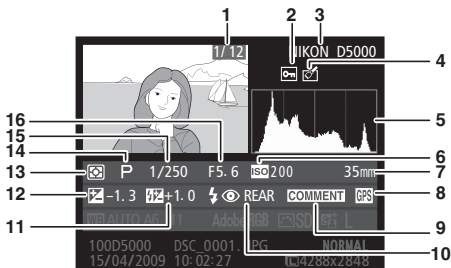
## ■ GPS Data\*



1	Protect status.....	125
2	Retouch indicator.....	175
3	Latitude	
4	Longitude	
5	Altitude	
6	Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)	
7	Camera name	
8	Frame number/total number of images	

\* Displayed only if GPS device was used when photo was taken (□ 114).

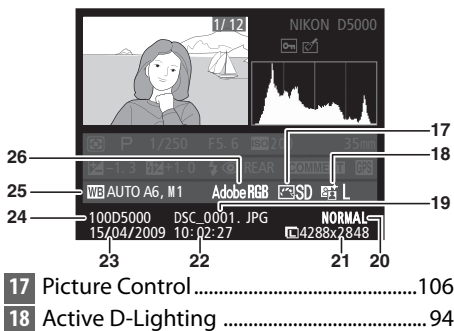
## ■ Overview Data



1	Frame number/total number of images	
2	Protect status.....	125
3	Camera name	
4	Retouch indicator.....	175

5	Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the image (□ 118).	
6	ISO sensitivity*.....	74
7	Focal length.....	197
8	GPS data indicator.....	114
9	Image comment indicator.....	169
10	Flash mode.....	71
11	Flash compensation.....	92
12	Exposure compensation.....	90
13	Metering.....	88
14	Shooting mode.....	28, 33, 80
15	Shutter speed.....	82, 84
16	Aperture.....	83, 84

\* Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.

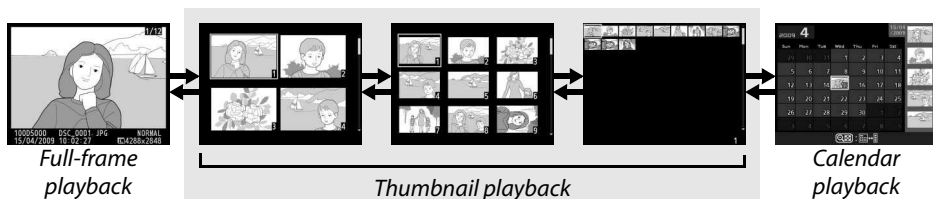
















17	Picture Control.....	106
18	Active D-Lighting.....	94

19	File name.....	63
20	Image quality.....	62
21	Image size.....	64
22	Time of recording.....	20
23	Date of recording.....	20
24	Folder name.....	152
25	White balance.....	96
	Color temperature.....	97
	White balance fine-tuning.....	98
	Preset manual.....	99
26	Color space.....	150

# Thumbnail Playback


To display images in “contact sheets” of four, nine, or 72 images, press the  button.

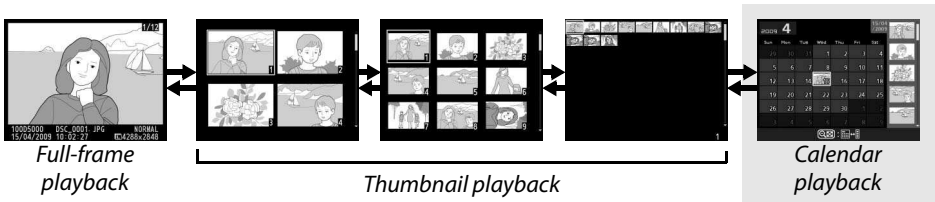



To	Use	Description
Display more images		Press  button to increase the number of images displayed.
Display fewer images		Press  button to reduce the number of images displayed. When four images are displayed, press to view highlighted image full frame.
Highlight images		Use multi selector or command dial to highlight images for full-frame playback, playback zoom (  124), deletion (  ) 126), or protection (  ) 125).
View highlighted image		Press  to display the highlighted image full frame.
Delete highlighted photo		See page 126 for more information.
Change protect status of highlighted photo	 (AE-L / AF-L)	See page 125 for more information.
Return to shooting mode	 / 	Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	<b>MENU</b>	See page 145 for more information.

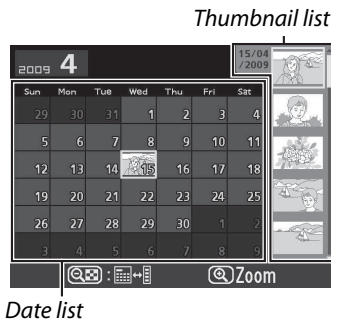


# Calendar Playback










To view images taken on a selected date, press the  button when 72 images are displayed.




Press the  button to toggle between the date list and the list of thumbnails for the selected date. Use the multi selector to highlight dates in the date list or to highlight pictures in the thumbnail list.








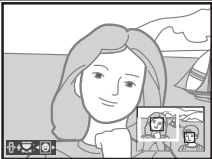






The operations can be performed depend on whether the cursor is in the date list or the thumbnail list:

To	Use	Description
Toggle between date list and thumbnail list		Press  button in date list to place cursor in thumbnail list. Press again to return to date list.
Exit to thumbnail playback/Zoom in on highlighted photo		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Date list:</b> Exit to 72-frame playback.</li> <li><b>Thumbnail list:</b> Press and hold  button to zoom in on highlighted picture.</li> </ul>
Toggle full frame playback		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Date list:</b> View first picture taken on selected date.</li> <li><b>Thumbnail list:</b> View highlighted picture.</li> </ul>
Highlight dates/Highlight images		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Date list:</b> Highlight date.</li> <li><b>Thumbnail list:</b> Highlight picture.</li> </ul>
Delete highlighted photo(s)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Date list:</b> Delete all pictures taken on selected date.</li> <li><b>Thumbnail list:</b> Delete highlighted picture (📖 126).</li> </ul>
Change protect status of highlighted photo		See page 125 for more information.
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	<b>MENU</b>	See page 145 for more information.

# Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the  button to zoom in on the image displayed in full-frame playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail or calendar playback. The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

To	Use	Description
Zoom in or out		Press  to zoom in to maximum of approximately 27 × (large images), 20 × (medium images) or 13 × (small images). Press  to zoom out. While photo is zoomed in, use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. Navigation window is displayed when zoom ratio is altered; area currently visible in monitor is indicated by yellow border. 
View other areas of image		
Select faces		Faces (up to 10) detected during zoom are indicated by white borders in navigation window. Press  and rotate command dial to scroll display to faces without changing zoom ratio. 
View other images		Rotate command dial to view same location in other images at current zoom ratio.
Cancel zoom		Cancel zoom and return to full-frame playback.
Change protect status		See page 125 for more information.
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	<b>MENU</b>	See page 145 for more information.

# Protecting Photographs from Deletion

In full-frame, zoom, thumbnail, and calendar playback, the **On** button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files can not be deleted using the **Trash** button or the **Delete** option in the playback menu. Note that protected images *will* be deleted when the memory card is formatted (23).

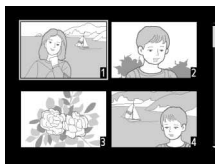
To protect a photograph:

## 1 Select an image.

Display the image in full-frame playback or playback zoom or highlight it in the thumbnail list in thumbnail or calendar playback.



Full-frame playback



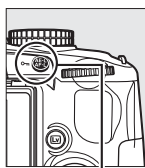
Thumbnail playback



Calendar playback

## 2 Press the **On** (AE-L/AF-L) button.

The photograph will be marked with a **On** icon. To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the **On** (AE-L/AF-L) button.




**On** (AE-L/AF-L) button



### Removing Protection from All Images

To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected in the **Playback folder** menu, press the **On** (AE-L/AF-L) and **Trash** buttons together for about two seconds.

# Deleting Photographs

To delete the photograph displayed in full-frame playback or the photograph highlighted in the thumbnail list, press the  button. To delete multiple selected photographs, all photographs taken on a selected date, or all photographs in the current playback folder, use the **Delete** option in the playback menu. Once deleted, photographs can not be recovered.

## Full-Frame, Thumbnail, and Calendar Playback

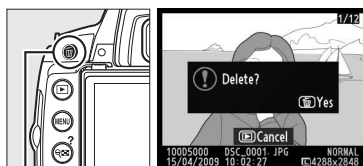
Press the  button to delete the current photograph.

### 1 Select an image.

Display the image or highlight it in the thumbnail list in thumbnail or calendar playback.

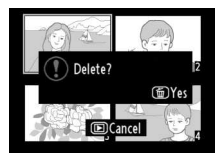
### 2 Press the button.

A confirmation dialog will be displayed.





 button

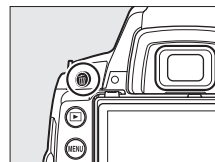
Full-frame playback





Thumbnail playback

### 3 Press the button again.

To delete the photograph, press the  button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the  button.





### Calendar Playback

During calendar playback, you can delete all photographs taken on a selected date by highlighting the date in the date list and pressing the  button ( 123).

# The Playback Menu

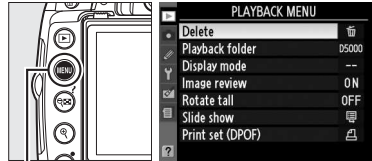
The **Delete** option in the playback menu contains the following options. Note that depending on the number of images, some time may be required for deletion.

Option	Description
 <b>Selected</b>	Delete selected pictures.
 <b>Select date</b>	Delete all pictures taken on a selected date.
<b>ALL All</b>	Delete all pictures in the folder currently selected for playback (📁 146).

## ■ Selected: Deleting Selected Photographs

### 1 Select Delete.

To display the menus, press the **MENU** button. Highlight **Delete** in the playback menu and press **▶**.



MENU button

### 2 Choose Selected.

Highlight **Selected** and press **▶**.



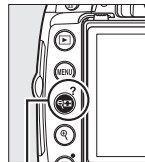
### 3 Highlight a picture.

Use the multi selector to highlight a picture (to view the highlighted picture full screen, press and hold the **Ⓜ** button).

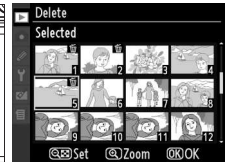


### 4 Select the highlighted picture.

Press the **Ⓜ** button to select the highlighted picture. Selected pictures are marked by a **📄** icon. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select additional pictures; to deselect a picture, highlight it and press **Ⓜ**.



Multi-selector button



### 5 Press **OK** to complete the operation.

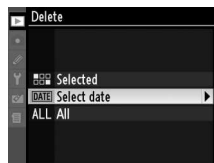
A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.



## ■ Select Date: Deleting Photographs Taken on a Selected Date

### 1 Choose Select Date.

In the delete menu, highlight **Select date** and press ►.

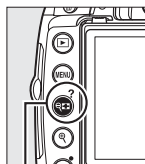


### 2 Highlight a date.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a date.



To view the pictures taken on the highlighted date, press . Use the multi-selector to scroll through the pictures, or press to view the current picture full screen. Press to return to the date list.

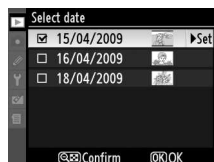


button



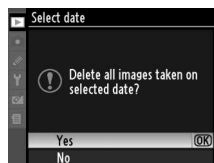
### 3 Select the highlighted date.

Press ► to select all pictures taken on the highlighted date. Selected dates are marked with a  icon. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select additional dates; to deselect a date, highlight it and press ►.



### 4 Press to complete the operation.

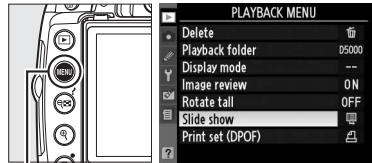
A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press .



# Slide Shows

The **Slide show** option in the playback menu is used to display a slide show of the pictures in the current playback folder (□ 146).

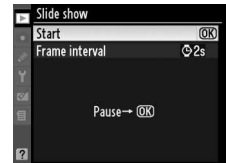
To display the slide show menu, press the **MENU** button and select **Slide show** in the playback menu.



MENU button

The slide show menu contains the following options:

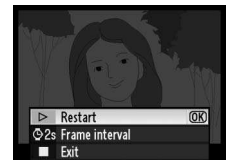
Option	Description
<b>Start</b>	Start slide show.
<b>Frame interval</b>	Choose how long each picture will be displayed.



To start the slide show, highlight **Start** in the slide show menu and press **OK**. The following operations can be performed while the slide show is in progress:

To	Use	Description
Skip back/skip ahead		Press ◀ to return to previous frame, ▶ to skip to next frame.
View additional photo info		Change photo info displayed (□ 117).
Pause/resume slide show		Pause show. Press again to resume.
Exit to playback menu	<b>MENU</b>	See page 146 for more information.
Exit to playback mode		End show and return to playback mode.
Exit to shooting mode		Press shutter-release button halfway to return to shooting mode.

A dialog shown at right is displayed when the show ends. Select **Restart** to restart or **Exit** to return to the playback menu.









# Connections

This chapter describes how to copy photographs to a computer, how to print pictures, and how to view them on a television set.

<b>Viewing Photographs on TV</b> .....	<b>132</b>
Standard Definition Devices .....	132
High-Definition Devices .....	133
<b>Connecting to a Computer</b> .....	<b>134</b>
Before Connecting the Camera .....	134
Connecting the Camera.....	135
<b>Printing Photographs</b> .....	<b>136</b>
Connecting the Printer .....	136
Printing Pictures One at a Time.....	137
Printing Multiple Pictures .....	139
Creating Index Prints .....	142
Creating a DPOF Print Order: Print Set .....	143



# Viewing Photographs on TV

The supplied EG-CP14 audio video (A/V) cable can be used to connect the camera to a television or VCR for playback or recording. A type C mini-pin **High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI)** cable (available separately from third-party suppliers) can be used to connect the camera to high-definition video devices.

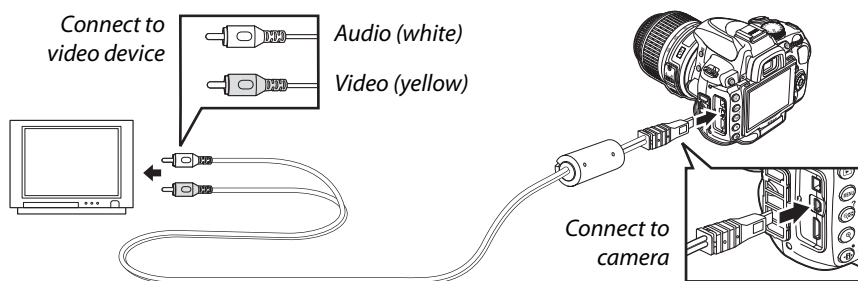
## Standard Definition Devices

Before connecting the camera to a standard television, confirm that the camera video standard (📖 168) matches that used in the TV.

### 1 Turn the camera off.

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting the A/V cable.

### 2 Connect the supplied A/V cable as shown.



### 3 Tune the television to the video channel.

### 4 Turn the camera on and press the button.

During playback, images will be displayed both in the camera monitor and on the television screen. Note that the edges of images may not be displayed.

#### **PAL**

Resolution drops when images are output on a PAL device.

#### **Television Playback**

Use of an EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector (available separately) is recommended for extended playback. When the camera is powered by an AC adapter, the monitor off delay is fixed at one hour.

# High-Definition Devices

The camera can be connected to HDMI devices using a type C mini-pin HDMI cable (available separately from third-party suppliers).

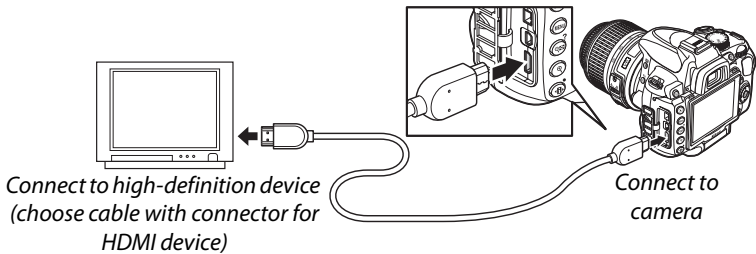
---

## 1 Turn the camera off.

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting an HDMI cable.

---

## 2 Connect the HDMI cable as shown.



---

## 3 Tune the device to the HDMI channel.

---

## 4 Turn the camera on and press the button.

During playback, images will be displayed on the high-definition television or monitor screen; the camera monitor will remain off.

### **HDMI** (📖 168)

At the default setting of **Auto**, the camera automatically selects the appropriate HDMI format for the high-definition device. The HDMI format can be chosen using the **HDMI** option in the setup menu (📖 168).

### **Close the Connector Cover**

Close the connector cover when the connectors are not in use. Foreign matter in the connectors can interfere with data transfer.



# Connecting to a Computer

This section describes how to use the supplied UC-E6 USB cable to connect the camera to a computer.

## Before Connecting the Camera

Before connecting the camera, install the software on the supplied Software Suite CD (see the *Quick Start Guide* for more information). To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera EN-EL9a battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before use or use an EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector (available separately).

### ■ ■ **Supported Operating Systems**

The camera can be connected to computers running the following operating systems:

- **Windows:** Windows Vista Service Pack 1 (32-bit Home Basic/Home Premium/Business/Enterprise/Ultimate) and Windows XP Service Pack 3 (Home Edition/Professional).
- **Macintosh:** Mac OS X (version 10.3.9, 10.4.11, 10.5.6)

See the websites listed on page xvi for the latest information on supported operating systems.

### ■ ■ **Supplied Software**

Nikon Transfer is used to copy photographs from the camera to the computer, where they can be viewed using ViewNX (Nikon Transfer can also be used to back up photographs and embed information in photographs as they are transferred, while ViewNX can be used to sort photographs, convert images to different file formats, and perform simple editing on NEF/RAW photographs).


#### **Connecting Cables**

Be sure the camera is off when connecting or disconnecting interface cables. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

#### **During Transfer**

Do not turn the camera off or disconnect the USB cable while transfer is in progress.

#### **Camera Control Pro 2**

Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately;  202) can be used to control the camera from a computer. When Camera Control Pro 2 is running, a capture mode indicator will be displayed in the viewfinder and information display.

# Connecting the Camera

Connect the camera using the supplied USB cable.

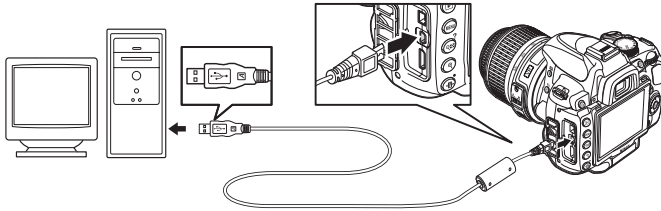
**1 Turn the camera off.**

**2 Turn the computer on.**

Turn the computer on and wait for it to start up.

**3 Connect the USB cable.**

Connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.



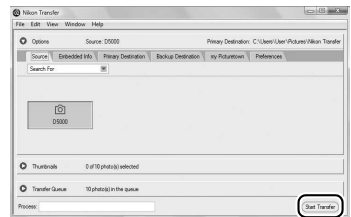
**USB Hubs**

Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

**4 Turn the camera on.**

**5 Transfer photographs.**

Nikon Transfer will start automatically; click the **Start Transfer** button to transfer photographs (for more information on using Nikon Transfer, select **Nikon Transfer help** from the Nikon Transfer **Help** menu).



**Start Transfer** button

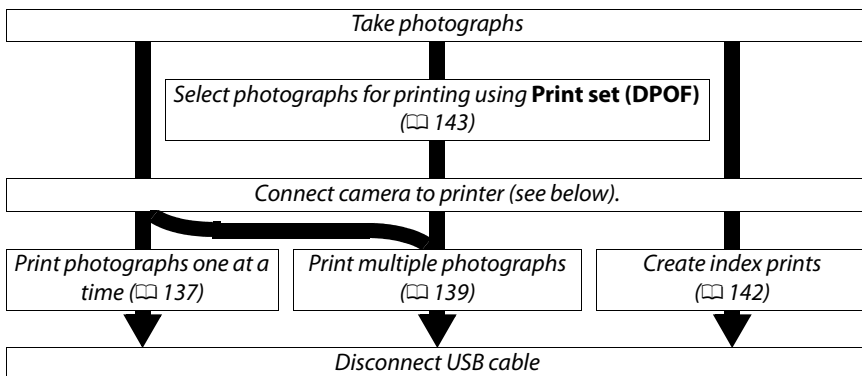
**6 Turn the camera off and disconnect the USB cable when transfer ends.**

Nikon Transfer will close automatically when transfer is complete.



# Printing Photographs

To print selected JPEG pictures on a PictBridge printer via a direct USB connection, follow the steps below.



## Printing Via Direct USB Connection

Be sure the EN-EL9a battery is fully charged or use an optional EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector. When taking photographs to be printed via direct USB connection in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, set **Color space** to **sRGB** (150).

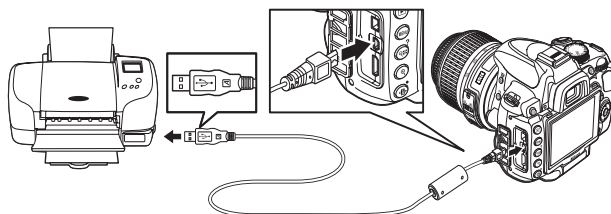
## Connecting the Printer

Connect the camera using the supplied USB cable.

**1** Turn the camera off.

**2** Connect the USB cable.

Turn the printer on and connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

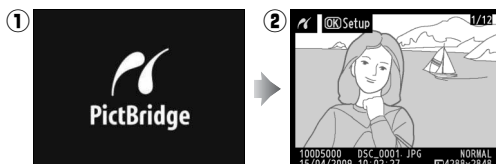


## USB Hubs

Connect the camera directly to the printer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub.

### 3 Turn the camera on.

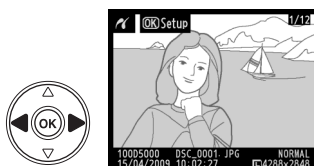
A welcome screen will be displayed in the monitor, followed by a PictBridge playback display.



## Printing Pictures One at a Time

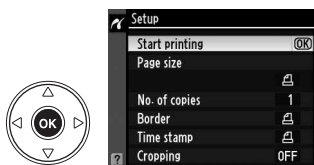
### 1 Select a picture.

Press ◀ or ▶ to view additional pictures, or press ▲ or ▼ to view photo information (□ 117). Press the Ⓚ button to zoom in on the current frame (□ 124; press ▶ to exit zoom). To view six pictures at a time, press the 6x6 button. Use the multi selector to highlight pictures, or press Ⓚ to display the highlighted picture full frame.



### 2 Display printing options.

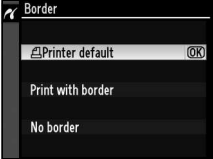
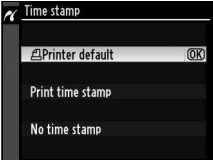
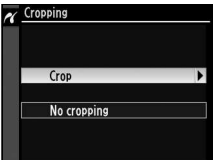
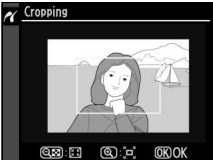
Press Ⓚ to display PictBridge printing options.



### 3 Adjust printing options.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option and press ▶ to select.

Option	Description
Page size	Menu of page sizes will be displayed (options not supported by current printer are not listed). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select <b>Printer default</b> ), then press Ⓚ to select and return to previous menu.
No. of copies	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose number of copies (maximum 99), then press Ⓚ to select and return to previous menu.

Option	Description
<b>Border</b>	<p>This option is available only if supported by current printer. Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose print style from <b>Printer default</b> (print using current printer settings), <b>Print with border</b> (print photo with white border), or <b>No border</b>, then press OK to select and return to previous menu. Only options supported by current printer will be displayed.</p> 
<b>Time stamp</b>	<p>Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose <b>Printer default</b> (print using current printer settings), <b>Print time stamp</b> (print time and date of recording on photo), or <b>No time stamp</b>, then press OK to select and return to previous menu.</p> 
<b>Cropping</b>	<p>This option is available only with printers that support cropping. Menu shown at right will be displayed. To exit without cropping picture, highlight <b>No cropping</b> and press OK. To crop picture, highlight <b>Crop</b> and press ►.</p> <p>If <b>Crop</b> is selected, dialog shown at right will be displayed. Press ↻ to increase size of crop, ↻ to decrease. Choose position of crop using multi selector and press OK. Note that print quality may drop if small crops are printed at large sizes.</p>  

## 4 Start printing.

Select **Start printing** and press OK to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press OK.



### ✔ Date Imprint

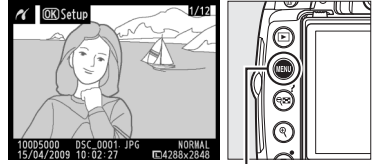
If you select **Print time stamp** in the PictBridge menu when printing photographs containing date information recorded using Custom Setting d6 (**Date imprint**, 160), the date will appear twice. The imprinted date may however be cropped out if the photographs are cropped or printed without a border.



# Printing Multiple Pictures

## 1 Display the PictBridge menu.

Press the **MENU** button in the PictBridge playback display (see Step 3 on page 137).

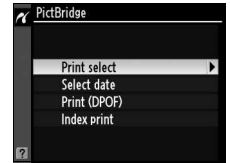


MENU button

## 2 Choose an option.

Highlight one of the following options and press **▶**.








- **Print select:** Select pictures for printing.
- **Select date:** Print one copy of all the pictures taken on a selected date.
- **Print (DPOF):** Print an existing print order created with the **Print set (DPOF)** option in the playback menu (□ 146). The current print order will be displayed in Step 3.





To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select **Index print**. See page 142 for more information.








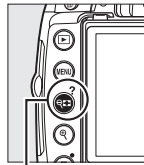
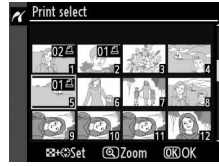
### 3 Select pictures or choose a date.



If you chose **Print select** or **Print (DPOF)** in **Step 2**, use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture full screen, press and hold the  button. To select the current picture for printing, press the  button and press . The picture will be marked with a  icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the  button pressed, press  or  to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press  when the number of prints is 1). Continue until all the desired pictures have been selected.

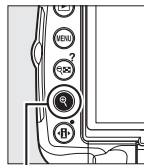
#### **Selecting Photographs for Printing**


NEF (RAW) photographs ( 62) can not be selected for printing. JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) images can be created using the **NEF (RAW) processing** option in the retouch menu ( 184).

If you chose **Select date** in **Step 2**, press  or  to highlight a date and press  to toggle the highlighted date on or off. To view the pictures taken on the selected date, press . Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures, or press and hold  to view the current picture full screen.




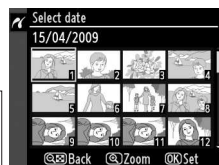
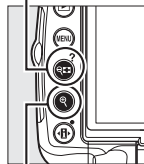
 +  : Choose number of copies




 button: View photo full screen



 button: View photos for selected date

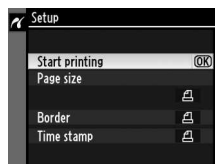


 button: View highlighted photo full screen



## 4 Display printing options.

Press **OK** to display PictBridge printing options.



## 5 Adjust printing options.

Press **▲** or **▼** to highlight an option and press **▶** to select.

Option	Description
<b>Page size</b>	Menu of page sizes will be displayed (□ 137; options not supported by current printer are not listed). Press <b>▲</b> or <b>▼</b> to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select <b>Printer default</b> ), then press <b>OK</b> to select and return to previous menu.
<b>Border</b>	Menu of border options will be displayed (□ 138; options not supported by current printer are not listed). Press <b>▲</b> or <b>▼</b> to choose print style from <b>Printer default</b> (print at current printer settings), <b>Print with border</b> (print photo with white border), or <b>No border</b> , then press <b>OK</b> to select and return to previous menu.
<b>Time stamp</b>	Menu of time stamp options will be displayed (□ 138; options not supported by current printer are not listed). Press <b>▲</b> or <b>▼</b> to choose <b>Printer default</b> (print at current printer settings), <b>Print time stamp</b> (print time and date of recording on photo), or <b>No time stamp</b> , then press <b>OK</b> to select and return to previous menu.

## 6 Start printing.

Select **Start printing** and press **OK** to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press **OK**.



### Errors

See page 221 for information on what to do if an error occurs during printing.

# Creating Index Prints

To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select **Index print** in Step 2 of "Printing Multiple Pictures" (☞ 139). Note that if the memory card contains more than 256 pictures, only the first 256 images will be printed.

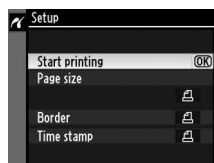
## 1 Select Index print.

Selecting **Index print** in the PictBridge menu (☞ 139) displays the images on the memory card as shown at right.



## 2 Display printing options.

Press **OK** to display PictBridge printing options.



## 3 Adjust printing options.

Choose page size, border, and time stamp options as described on page 141 (a warning will be displayed if the selected page size is too small).

## 4 Start printing.

Select **Start printing** and press **OK** to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press **OK**.



# Creating a DPOF Print Order: Print Set

The **Print set (DPOF)** option in the playback menu is used to create digital “print orders” for PictBridge-compatible printers and devices that support DPOF. Selecting **Print set (DPOF)** from the playback menu displays the menu shown in Step 1.

## 1 Choose Select/set.


Highlight **Select/set** and press **▶**.

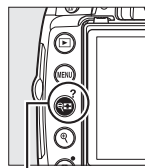
### Creating a New Print Order

To remove all previously selected pictures from the print order, highlight **Deselect all?** and press **OK**.

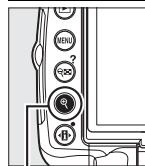


## 2 Select pictures.

Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture in full screen, press and hold the **Q** button. To select the current picture for printing, press the **Q** button and press **▲**. The picture will be marked with a  icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the **Q** button pressed, press **▲** or **▼** to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press **▼** when the number of prints is 1). Continue until all the desired pictures have been selected.



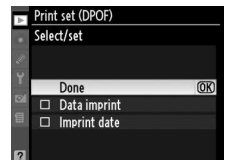
**Q** + **▲** / **▼**: Choose number of copies



**Q** button: View photo full screen

## 3 Display imprint options.

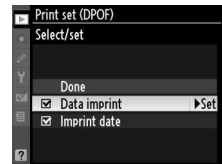
Press **OK** to display data imprint options.



## 4 Select imprint options.

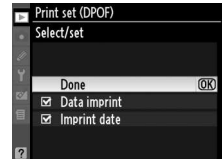
Highlight the following options and press ► to toggle the highlighted option on or off (to complete the print order without including this information, proceed to Step 5).

- **Data imprint:** Print shutter speed and aperture on all pictures in print order.
- **Imprint date:** Print date of recording on all pictures in print order.



## 5 Complete the print order.

Highlight **Done** and press OK to complete the print order.



### ✓ Print Set (DPOF)

To print the current print order when the camera is connected to a PictBridge printer, select **Print (DPOF)** in the PictBridge menu and follow the steps in "Printing Multiple Pictures" to modify and print the current order (□ 139). DPOF date and data imprint options are not supported when printing via direct USB connection; to print the date of recording on photographs in the current print order, use the PictBridge **Time stamp** option.

The **Print set (DPOF)** option can not be used if there is not enough space on the memory card to store the print order.







NEF (RAW) photographs (□ 62) can not be selected using this option. JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) images can be created using the **NEF (RAW) processing** option in the retouch menu (□ 184).

Print orders may not print correctly if images are deleted using a computer or other device after the print order is created.



# Menu Guide

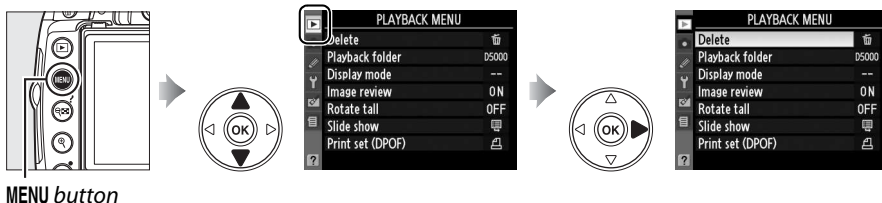
The current menu is displayed by pressing the **MENU** button; to select from the menus listed below, press **◀**. This chapter describes the options available in the menus below.

 <b>The Playback Menu: Managing Images</b> .....	146
 <b>The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options</b> .....	148
 <b>Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings</b> .....	153
 <b>The Setup Menu: Camera Setup</b> .....	165
 <b>The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies</b> .....	174
 <b>Recent Settings/My Menu</b> .....	190





# ▶ The Playback Menu: *Managing Images*

To display the playback menu, press **MENU** and select the  (playback menu) tab.



MENU button

The playback menu contains the following options:

Option	Default		Option	Default	
<b>Delete</b>	—	127	<b>Rotate tall</b>	Off	147
<b>Playback folder</b>	Current	146	<b>Slide show</b>	—	129
<b>Display mode</b>	—	146	<b>Print set (DPOF)</b>	—	143
<b>Image review</b>	On	147			

## Playback Folder


MENU button →  playback menu

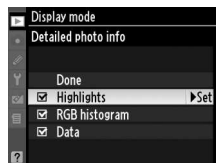
Choose a folder for playback:

Option	Description
<b>Current</b>	Only photos in the folder currently selected for <b>Active folder</b> in the shooting menu are displayed during playback. This option is selected automatically when a photo is taken. If a memory card is inserted and this option selected before photos have been taken, a message stating that the folder contains no images will be displayed during playback. Select <b>All</b> to begin playback.
<b>All</b>	Pictures in all folders will be visible during playback.

## Display Mode

MENU button →  playback menu


Choose the information available in the playback photo information display ( 117). Press **▲** or **▼** to highlight an option, then press **▶** to select the option for the photo information display. A  appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press **▶**. To return to the playback menu, highlight **Done** and press **OK**.

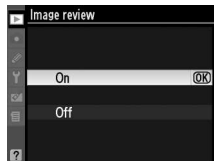




## Image Review


MENU button →  playback menu


Choose whether pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting. If **Off** is selected, pictures can only be displayed by pressing the  button.



## Rotate Tall

MENU button →  playback menu

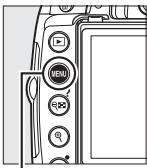
Choose whether to rotate “tall” (portrait-orientation) pictures for display during playback. Note that because the camera itself is already in the appropriate orientation during shooting, images are not rotated automatically during image review ( 147).

Option	Description
<b>On</b>	“Tall” (portrait-orientation) pictures are automatically rotated for display in the camera monitor. Pictures taken with <b>Off</b> selected for <b>Auto image rotation</b> (  170) will be displayed in “wide” (landscape) orientation.
<b>Off</b>	“Tall” (portrait-orientation) pictures are displayed in “wide” (landscape) orientation.

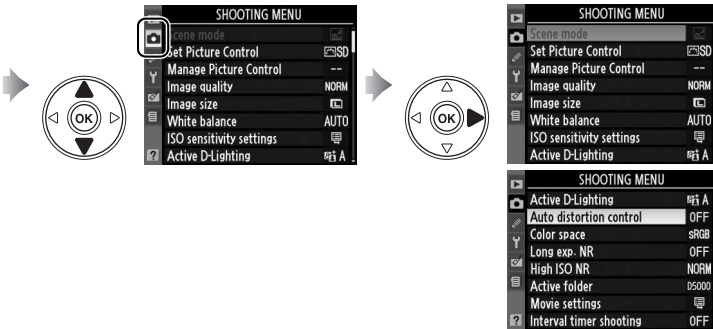


# 📷 The Shooting Menu: *Shooting Options*

To display the shooting menu, press **MENU** and select the 📷 (shooting menu) tab.



MENU button



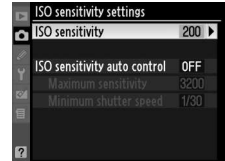
The shooting menu contains the following options:

Option	Default	📖
<b>Scene mode</b>	Night landscape	33
<b>Set Picture Control</b>	Standard	106
<b>Manage Picture Control</b>	—	111
<b>Image quality</b>	JPEG normal	62
<b>Image size</b>	Large	64
<b>White balance</b>	Auto	96
<b>ISO sensitivity settings</b>	Varies; see page 78	74
<b>Active D-Lighting</b>	Auto	94

Option	Default	📖
<b>Auto distortion control</b>	Off	150
<b>Color space</b>	sRGB	150
<b>Long exp. NR</b>	Off	151
<b>High ISO NR</b>	Normal	151
<b>Active folder</b>	—	152
<b>Movie settings</b>	640 × 424 (3 : 2); sound on	51
<b>Interval timer shooting</b>	—	76

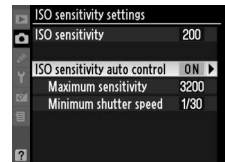


Adjust ISO sensitivity (☞ 74).



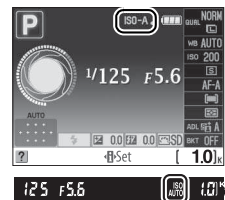
## ■ ISO Sensitivity Auto Control

If **Off** is chosen for **ISO sensitivity auto control** in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, ISO sensitivity will remain fixed at the value selected by the user (☞ 74). When **On** is chosen, ISO sensitivity will automatically be adjusted if optimal exposure can not be achieved at the value selected by the user (flash level is adjusted appropriately). The maximum value for auto ISO sensitivity can



be selected using the **Maximum sensitivity** option in the **ISO sensitivity auto control** menu (choose lower values to prevent noise; the minimum value for auto ISO sensitivity is automatically set to ISO 200). In modes **P** and **A**, sensitivity will only be adjusted if underexposure would result at the shutter speed selected for **Minimum shutter speed**. Slower shutter speeds will be used only if optimum exposure can not be achieved at the ISO sensitivity value selected for **Maximum sensitivity**. If the ISO sensitivity selected by the user is higher than the value selected for **Maximum sensitivity**, the value selected for **Maximum sensitivity** will be used instead.

When **On** is selected, the viewfinder shows **ISO-AUTO** and the information display **ISO-A**. These indicators blink when sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user.



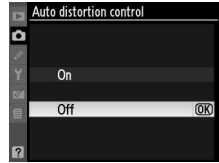
### ✍ Auto ISO Sensitivity Control

Noise is more likely at higher sensitivities. Use the **High ISO NR** option in the shooting menu to reduce noise (☞ 151). Note that ISO sensitivity may be raised automatically when auto ISO sensitivity control is used in combination with slow sync flash modes (available with the built-in flash and SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400 flash units), possibly preventing the camera from selecting slow shutter speeds.

## Auto Distortion Control

MENU button →  shooting menu

Select **On** to reduce barrel distortion when shooting with wide-angle lenses and to reduce pin-cushion distortion when shooting with long lenses (note that the edges of the area visible in the viewfinder may be cropped out of the final photograph, and that the time needed to process photographs before recording begins may increase). This option is available only with type G and D lenses (PC, fisheye, and certain other lenses excluded).



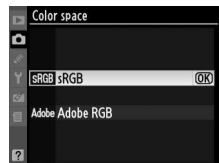
### Retouch: Distortion Control

For information creating copies of existing photographs with reduced barrel and pin-cushion distortion, see page 185.

## Color Space

MENU button →  shooting menu

The color space determines the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. Choose **sRGB** for photographs that will be printed or used “as is,” with no further modification. **Adobe RGB** has a wider color gamut and is recommended for images that will be extensively processed or retouched after leaving the camera.



### Color Space

Color spaces define the correspondence between colors and the numeric values that represent them in a digital image file. The sRGB color space is widely used, while the Adobe RGB color space is typically used in publishing and commercial printing. sRGB is recommended when taking photographs that will be printed without modification or viewed in applications that do not support color management, or when taking photographs that will be printed with ExifPrint, the direct printing option on some household printers, or kiosk printing or other commercial print services. Adobe RGB photographs can also be printed using these options, but colors will not be as vivid.

JPEG photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space are DCF compliant; applications and printers that support DCF will select the correct color space automatically. If the application or device does not support DCF, select the appropriate color space manually. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application or device.

### Nikon Software

ViewNX (supplied) and Capture NX 2 (available separately) automatically select the correct color space when opening photographs created with this camera.

## Long Exp. NR

MENU button →  shooting menu

If **On** is selected, photographs taken at shutter speeds slower than 8 s will be processed to reduce noise. The time required for processing is roughly equal to the current shutter speed; during processing, “**Long Exp. NR**” will blink in the viewfinder and photographs can not be taken. In continuous release mode, frame rates will slow and the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Noise reduction will not be performed if the camera is turned off before processing is complete.



## High ISO NR

MENU button →  shooting menu

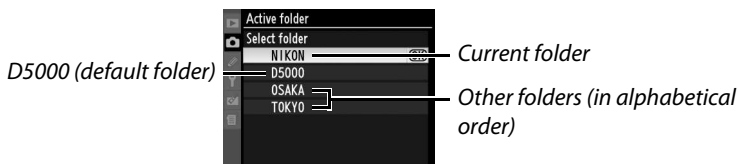
Photographs taken at high ISO sensitivities can be processed to reduce “noise.”

Option	Description
HIGH <b>High</b>	Noise reduction is performed at ISO sensitivities of ISO 800 and higher. While photographs are being processed, the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Choose the amount of noise reduction performed from <b>High</b> , <b>Normal</b> , and <b>Low</b> .
NORM <b>Normal</b>	
LOW <b>Low</b>	
<b>Off</b>	Noise reduction is only performed at sensitivities of Hi 0.3 and higher. The amount of noise reduction is less than the amount performed when <b>Low</b> is selected for <b>High ISO NR</b> .



Create, rename, or delete folders, or choose the folder in which subsequent photographs will be stored.

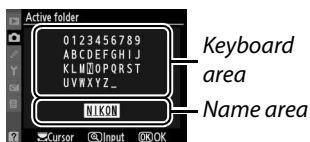
- **Select folder:** Choose the folder in which subsequent photographs will be stored.



- **New:** Create a new folder and name it as described below.
- **Rename:** Select a folder from the list and rename it as described below.
- **Delete:** Delete all empty folders on the memory card.

## ■■ Naming and Renaming Folders


Folder names can be up to five characters long. To move the cursor in the name area, rotate the command dial. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the button. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the button. Press to save changes and return to the shooting menu, or press MENU to exit without creating a new folder or changing the folder name.

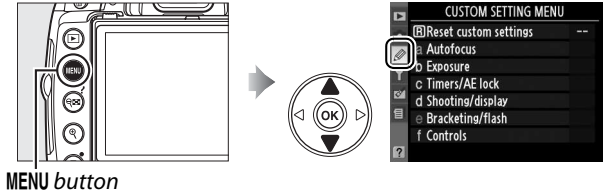


### Folder Names

On the memory card, folder names are preceded by a three-digit folder number assigned automatically by the camera (e.g., 100D5000). Each folder can contain up to 999 photographs. During shooting, pictures are stored in the highest-numbered folder with the selected name. If a photograph is taken when the current folder is full or contains a photograph numbered 999, the camera will create a new folder by adding one to the current folder number (e.g., 101D5000). The camera treats folders with the same name but different folder numbers as the same folder. For example, if the folder NIKON is selected for **Active folder**, photographs in all folders named NIKON (100NIKON, 101NIKON, 102NIKON, etc.) will be visible when **Current** is selected for **Playback folder** ( 146). Renaming changes all folders with the same name but leaves the folder numbers intact.

# Custom Settings: *Fine-Tuning Camera Settings*

To display the Custom Settings menu, press **MENU** and select the  (Custom Settings menu) tab.



**MENU** button

Custom Settings are used to customize camera settings to suit individual preferences.

## *Custom Setting groups*





*Main menu*

The main Custom Setting Menu is shown with the following options: **Reset custom settings**, **Autofocus**, **Exposure**, **Timers/AE lock**, **Shooting/display**, **Bracketing/flash**, and **Controls**. Below the main menu, a confirmation dialog asks "Reset custom settings" with "Yes" and "No" options. A note indicates "Reset custom settings (154)".

The detailed sub-menus for each group are:

- Autofocus**:
  - 1 AF-area mode
  - 2 Built-in AF-assist illuminator: ON
  - 3 Live view autofocus
  - 4 Rangefinder: OFF
  - b1 EV steps for exposure ctrl: 1/3
  - c1 Shutter-release button AEL: OFF
  - c2 Auto off timers: NORM
  - c3 Self-timer
- Exposure**:
  - EV steps for exposure ctrl: 1/3
  - c1 Shutter-release button AEL: OFF
  - c2 Auto off timers: NORM
  - c3 Self-timer
  - c4 Remote on duration: 1 min
  - a1 Beep: H
  - a2 Viewfinder grid display: OFF
  - a3 ISO display: OFF
- Timers/AE lock**:
  - Shutter-release button AEL: OFF
  - c2 Auto off timers: NORM
  - c3 Self-timer
  - c4 Remote on duration: 1 min
  - a1 Beep: H
  - a2 Viewfinder grid display: OFF
  - a3 ISO display: OFF
  - a4 File number sequence: OFF
- Shooting/display**:
  - Beep: H
  - a2 Viewfinder grid display: OFF
  - a3 ISO display: OFF
  - a4 File number sequence: OFF
  - a5 Exposure delay mode: OFF
  - a6 Date imprint: --
  - a7 Live view display options
  - a8 Flash ctrl for built-in flash: TTL
- Bracketing/flash**:
  - a7 Live view display options
  - a1 Flash ctrl for built-in flash: TTL
  - Auto bracketing set: AE
  - r1 Assign C/Fn button
  - r2 Assign AE/AF-L button
  - r3 Reverse dial rotation: OFF
  - r4 No memory card: LOCK
  - r5 Reverse indicators: +0-
- Controls**:
  - a7 Live view display options
  - Flash ctrl for built-in flash: TTL
  - Auto bracketing set: AE
  - r1 Assign C/Fn button
  - r2 Assign AE/AF-L button
  - r3 Reverse dial rotation: OFF
  - r4 No memory card: LOCK
  - r5 Reverse indicators: +0-

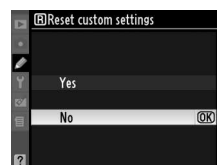
The following Custom Settings are available:

Custom Setting		Default	
 <b>Reset custom settings</b>			154
<b>a Autofocus</b>			
a1	AF-area mode	Varies with shooting mode; see page 78	155
a2	Built-in AF-assist illuminator	On	155
a3	Live view autofocus	Varies with shooting mode; see page 78	155
a4	Rangefinder	Off	156
<b>b Exposure</b>			
b1	EV steps for exposure cntrl.	1/3 step	156
<b>c Timers/AE lock</b>			
c1	Shutter-release button AE-L	Off	156
c2	Auto off timers	Normal	157
c3	Self-timer	10 s; number of shots: 1	157
c4	Remote on duration	1 min.	157
<b>d Shooting/display</b>			
d1	Beep	High	158
d2	Viewfinder grid display	Off	158
d3	ISO display	Off	158
d4	File number sequence	Off	159
d5	Exposure delay mode	Off	159
d6	Date imprint	Off	160
d7	Live view display options	—	161
<b>e Bracketing/flash</b>			
e1	Flash cntrl for built-in flash	TTL	162
e2	Auto bracketing set	AE bracketing	162
<b>f Controls</b>			
f1	Assign  /Fn button	Self-timer	163
f2	Assign AE-L/AF-L button	AE/AF lock	164
f3	Reverse dial rotation	No	164
f4	No memory card?	Release locked	164
f5	Reverse indicators		164

## **Reset Custom Settings**

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose **Yes** to reset Custom Settings to default values. Custom Settings are not reset when a two-button reset is performed.



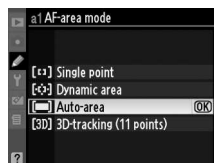


## a: Autofocus

### a1: AF-area Mode

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

This option determines how the focus point for autofocus is selected (☞ 56).

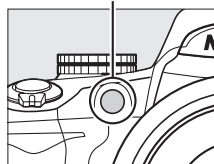


### a2: Built-in AF-assist Illuminator

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

If **On** is selected and lighting is poor, the built-in AF-assist illuminator (☞ 55) will light to assist the focus operation in single-servo AF (**AF-S** selected for focus mode, or single-servo AF selected in **AF-A** focus mode) when **Auto-area** is selected for AF-area mode or when **Single point**, **Dynamic area**, or **3D-tracking (11 points)** is selected and the center focus point is used. If **Off** is selected, the AF-assist illuminator will not light to assist the focus operation. The camera may not be able to focus using autofocus when lighting is poor.

*AF-assist illuminator*



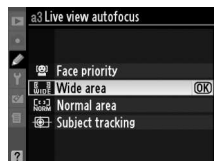
#### See Also

See page 197 for restrictions on the lenses that can be used with AF assist. See page 212 for the shooting modes in which the AF-assist illuminator can be used.

### a3: Live View Autofocus

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

This option determines how the focus point for autofocus is selected in live view (☞ 43).



## a4: Rangefinder

MENU button → Custom Settings menu

Choose **On** to use the exposure indicator to determine whether the camera is correctly focused in manual focus mode (☐ 54; note that this function is not available in shooting mode **M**, when the exposure indicator instead shows whether the subject is correctly exposed).

Indicator	Description	Indicator	Description
	Camera in focus.		Focus point is slightly behind subject.
	Focus point is slightly in front of subject.		Focus point is well behind subject.
	Focus point is well in front of subject.		Camera can not determine correct focus.

### Using the Rangefinder

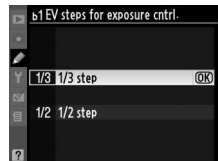
The rangefinder requires a lens with a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster and is not available in live view. The desired results may not be achieved in situations in which the camera would be unable to focus using autofocus (☐ 55).

## b: Exposure

### b1: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl.

MENU button → Custom Settings menu

This option determines whether adjustments to shutter speed, aperture, exposure compensation, flash compensation, and bracketing are made in increments equivalent to  $\frac{1}{3}$  EV (**1/3 step**) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  EV (**1/2 step**).

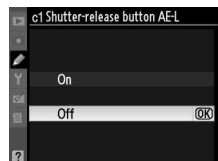


## c: Timers/AE Lock

### c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L

MENU button → Custom Settings menu


At the default setting of **Off**, exposure only locks when the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed. If **On** is selected, exposure will also lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.



## c2: Auto off Timers

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

This option determines how long the monitor remains on if no operations are performed during menu display and playback (**Playback/menus**), while photographs are displayed in the monitor after shooting (**Image review**), and how long the exposure meters, viewfinder, and information display remain on when no operations are performed (**Auto meter-off**). Choose shorter auto-off delays to reduce the drain on the battery.

Option	Description (all times are approximate)			
SHORT Short NORM Normal LONG Long	Auto-off timers are set to the following values:			
		Playback/menus	Image review	Auto meter-off
	Short	8 s	4 s	4 s
	Normal	12 s	4 s	8 s
Long	20 s	20 s	1 min.	
 Custom	Make separate adjustments to the <b>Playback/menus</b> , <b>Image review</b> , and <b>Auto meter-off</b> timers. When settings are complete, highlight <b>Done</b> and press <b>OK</b> .			

### Auto off Timers


The exposure meters will not turn off automatically when the camera is powered by an optional EH-5a AC adapter and EP-5 power connector. The monitor and viewfinder will not turn off automatically when the camera is connected to a printer via USB.

## c3: Self-Timer

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose the length of the shutter release delay and the number of shots taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed in self-timer mode.

Option	Description
<b>Self-timer delay</b>	Choose a shutter release delay.
<b>Number of shots</b>	Press <b>▲</b> or <b>▼</b> to choose the number of shots taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed in self-timer mode (if a value other than <b>1</b> is selected, shots will be taken at 3 s intervals).



## c4: Remote on Duration

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu


Choose how long the camera will wait for a signal from the remote before cancelling delayed or quick-response remote mode and restoring single-frame, continuous, or quiet shutter-release mode (□ 65). Choose shorter times for longer battery life.



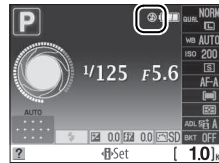
## d: Shooting/Display

### d1: Beep

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

If **High** (high pitch) or **Low** (low pitch) is selected, a beep will sound at the selected pitch when the camera focuses in single-servo AF (**AF-S** or when shooting stationary subjects in **AF-A** focus mode), while the release timer is counting down in self-timer and delayed remote modes (📖 65, 67), or when a photograph is taken in quick-response remote mode (📖 67). The beep will not sound when **Off** is selected; note that in  (quiet shutter-release mode), **Beep** is not available and a beep does not sound when the camera focuses.

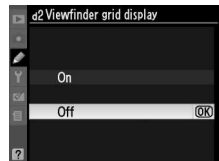
The current setting is shown in the information display: 🎵 is displayed when the beep is on, 🚫 when it is off.



### d2: Viewfinder Grid Display

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose **On** to display on-demand grid lines in the viewfinder for reference when composing photographs.



### d3: ISO Display

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose **On** to show the current ISO sensitivity setting in the frame count displays in the viewfinder.



## d4: File Number Sequence

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera.

Option	Description
<b>On</b>	When a new folder is created, the memory card formatted, or a new memory card inserted in the camera, file numbering continues from the last number used or from the largest file number in the current folder, whichever is higher. If a photograph is taken when the current folder contains a photograph numbered 9999, a new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.
<b>Off</b>	File numbering is reset to 0001 when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that a new folder is created automatically if a photograph is taken when the current folder contains 999 photographs.
<b>RESET Reset</b>	Same as for <b>On</b> , except that the next photograph taken is assigned a file number by adding one to the largest file number in the current folder. If the folder is empty, file numbering is reset to 0001.

### File Number Sequence

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains either 999 photographs or a photograph numbered 9999, the shutter-release button will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. Choose **Reset** for Custom Setting d4 and then either format the current memory card or insert a new memory card.

## d5: Exposure Delay Mode

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu




At the default setting of **Off**, shutter is released when the shutter-release button is pressed. In situations where the slightest camera movement can blur pictures, **On** can be selected to delay shutter release until about 1 s after the shutter-release button is pressed and the mirror is raised.



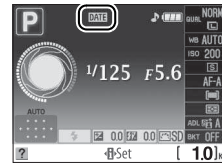
## d6: Date Imprint

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu




Choose the date information imprinted on photographs as they are taken.

Option	Description
<b>Off</b>	The time and date do not appear on photographs.
DATE <b>Date</b>	The date or date and time are imprinted on photographs taken while this option is in effect. 15.04.2009
DATE  <b>Date and time</b>	15.04.2009 10:02
 <b>Date counter</b>	New photos are imprinted with a time stamp showing the number of days between the date of shooting and a selected date (  161).

At settings other than **Off**, the selected option is indicated by a **DATE** icon in the information display.



### Date Imprint

The date is recorded in the order selected in the **Time zone and date** menu ( 169). Date information is not imprinted on photographs taken in NEF (RAW) format and can not be added to or removed from existing pictures. To print the date of recording on photographs taken with date imprint off, select **Time stamp** in the PictBridge menu ( 138, 141), or select **Imprint date** in the **Print set (DPOF)** menu to print the date of recording on all pictures in the current DPOF print order ( 144).

## ■ ■ Date Counter

Pictures taken while this option is in effect are imprinted with the number of days remaining until a future date or the number of days elapsed since a past date. Use it to track the growth of a child or count down the days until a birthday or wedding.

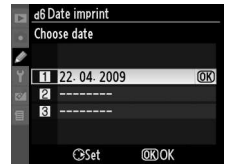
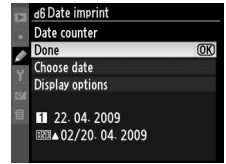


Future date (two days remaining)

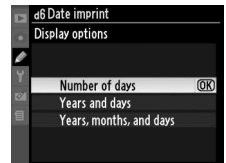


Past date (two days elapsed)

Up to three separate dates can be stored in slots 1, 2, and 3. The first time you use the date counter, you will be prompted to select a date for slot 1; enter a date using the multi selector and press **OK**. To change the date or store additional dates, highlight a slot, press **▶**, and enter the date. To use the stored date, highlight the slot and press **OK**.



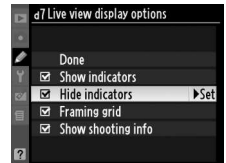
To choose a date counter format, highlight **Display options** and press **▶** to display the menu shown at right. Highlight an option and press **OK**. Highlight **Done** in the date counter menu and press **OK** when settings are complete.



## d7: Live View Display Options

MENU button → Custom Settings menu

Choose the indicators available for display in live view mode (45). Press **▲** or **▼** to highlight an option, then press **▶** to select. A  appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press **▶**. To return to the Custom Settings menu, highlight **Done** and press **OK** (note that at least one option must be on).



## e: Bracketing/Flash

### e1: Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash

MENU button → Custom Settings menu

Choose the flash mode for the built-in flash in **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes.

Option	Description
TTL  TTL	Flash output is adjusted automatically in response to shooting conditions.
<b>Manual</b>	Choose a flash level between <b>Full</b> and <b>1/32</b> (1/32 of full power). At full power, the built-in flash has a Guide Number of 18/59 (m/ft., ISO 200, 20 °C/68 °F).

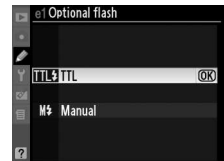
#### **Manual**

A icon blinks in the viewfinder and information display when **Manual** is selected and the flash is raised.



#### **The SB-400**

When an optional SB-400 flash unit is attached and turned on, Custom Setting e1 changes to **Optional flash**, allowing the flash control mode for the SB-400 to be selected from **TTL** and **Manual**.



#### **Flash Control**

The following types of flash control are supported when a CPU lens is used in combination with the built-in flash or optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-400 flash units (📖 70, 198).

- **i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR:** Flash output is adjusted for a natural balance between the main subject and the background.
- **Standard i-TTL Fill-Flash for Digital SLR:** Flash output is adjusted for the main subject; the brightness of the background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which the main subject is emphasized at the expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used.

Standard i-TTL flash control is used with spot metering or when selected with the optional flash unit. i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR is used in all other cases.

### e2: Auto Bracketing Set

MENU button → Custom Settings menu

Choose the setting (exposure, Active D-Lighting, or white balance) varied when bracketing is in effect (**P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes only; see page 103).

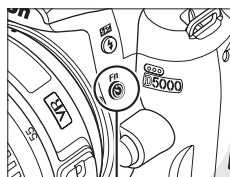



## f: Controls














### f1: Assign /Fn Button

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose the role played by the **Fn** () button.



Fn () button

Option	Description
 <b>Self-timer</b>	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button to toggle self-timer mode on and off (□ 69).
 <b>Release mode</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select the release mode (□ 65).
QUAL <b>Image quality/size</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select image quality and size (□ 62).
ISO <b>ISO sensitivity</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select ISO sensitivity (□ 74).
WB <b>White balance</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select white balance ( <b>P</b> , <b>S</b> , <b>A</b> , and <b>M</b> modes only; □ 96).
 <b>Active D-Lighting</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select an Active D-Lighting option ( <b>P</b> , <b>S</b> , <b>A</b> , and <b>M</b> modes only; □ 94).
+  <b>+NEF (RAW)</b>	If image quality is set to <b>JPEG fine</b> , <b>JPEG normal</b> , or <b>JPEG basic</b> , “RAW” will appear in the information display and an NEF (RAW) copy will be recorded with the next picture taken after the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button is pressed. The exposure-count displays show the number of NEF (RAW) images that can be recorded. To exit without recording an NEF (RAW) copy, press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button again or turn the camera off.
BKT <b>Auto bracketing</b> *	Press the <b>Fn</b> (  ) button and rotate the command dial to select a bracketing increment (exposure and white balance bracketing) or to turn ADL bracketing on or off ( <b>P</b> , <b>S</b> , <b>A</b> , and <b>M</b> modes only; □ 104).

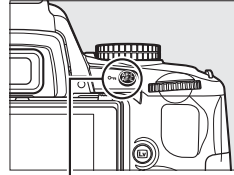
\* The item currently selected for Custom Setting f1 is shown by a white-on-black icon (**Release mode** is shown by an **Fn** icon).








## f2: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose the role played by the **AE-L/AF-L** button.



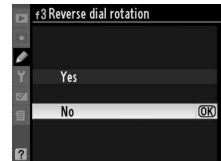
AE-L/AF-L button

Option	Description
 <b>AE/AF lock</b>	Focus and exposure lock while the <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button is pressed.
 <b>AE lock only</b>	Exposure locks while the <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button is pressed.
 <b>AF lock only</b>	Focus locks while the <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button is pressed.
 <b>AE lock (hold)</b>	Exposure locks when the <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
 <b>AF-ON</b>	The <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button initiates autofocus. The shutter-release button can not be used to focus.

## f3: Reverse Dial Rotation

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

Choose **Yes** to reverse the direction of the command dial.




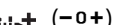
## f4: No Memory Card?

MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

If **Release locked** is selected, the shutter-release button is only enabled when a memory card is inserted in the camera. Selecting **Enable release** allows the shutter to be released when no memory card is inserted, although no pictures will be recorded (they will however be displayed in the monitor in demo mode). Note that when photographs are being captured to a computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately), photographs are not recorded to the camera memory card and the shutter will be enabled regardless of the setting chosen for this option.

## f5: Reverse Indicators

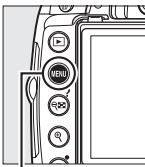
MENU button →  Custom Settings menu

At the default setting of  (+0-), the exposure indicators in the viewfinder and information display are displayed with positive values on the left and negative values on the right. Select  (-0+) to display negative values on the left and positive values on the right.

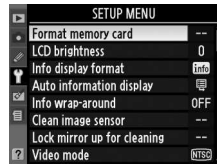
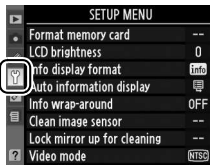
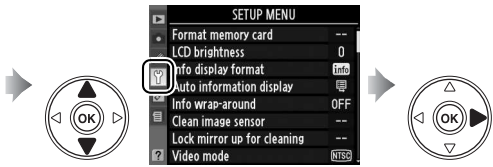


# Y The Setup Menu: *Camera Setup*

To display the setup menu, press **MENU** and select the **Y** (setup menu) tab.



MENU button



The setup menu contains the following options:

Option	Default	
<b>Format memory card</b>	—	23
<b>LCD brightness</b>	0; Auto dim: on	166
<b>Info display format</b>	Graphic; Background color black	166
<b>Auto information display</b>	On	168
<b>Info wrap-around</b>	Off	168
<b>Clean image sensor</b>	—	206
<b>Lock mirror up for cleaning<sup>1</sup></b>	—	208
<b>Video mode</b>	—	168

Option	Default	
<b>HDMI</b>	Auto	168
<b>Time zone and date</b>	—	169
<b>Language</b>	—	169
<b>Image comment</b>	—	169
<b>Auto image rotation</b>	On	170
<b>Image dust off ref photo</b>	—	171
<b>GPS</b>	Auto meter off: enable	114
<b>Eye-Fi upload<sup>2</sup></b>	Enable	173
<b>Firmware version</b>	—	173

1 Not available when battery is low.

2 Only available when compatible Eye-Fi memory card is inserted (□ 173).

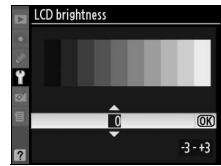


## LCD Brightness

MENU button → Y setup menu

The LCD brightness menu contains the following options:

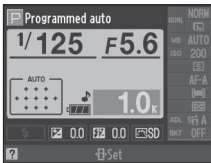
- **LCD brightness:** The menu at right will be displayed; press ▲ or ▼ to choose monitor brightness. Choose higher values for increased brightness, lower values for reduced brightness.
- **Auto dim:** If **On** is selected, the monitor will gradually dim while shooting information is displayed.



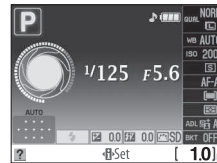
## Info Display Format

MENU button → Y setup menu

Choose from the following two formats for the information display (📖 8). Separate formats can be selected for auto and scene modes on the one hand and for **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes on the other.



Classic (📖 167)



Graphic (📖 8)

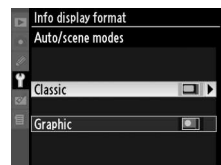
### 1 Choose the modes in which the selected information display will be used.

Highlight **Auto/scene modes** or **P, S, A, and M modes** and press ►.



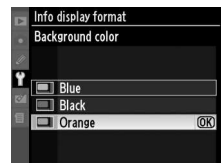
### 2 Select **Classic** or **Graphic**.

Highlight **Classic** or **Graphic** and press ►.



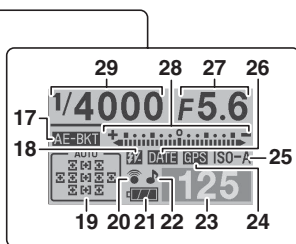
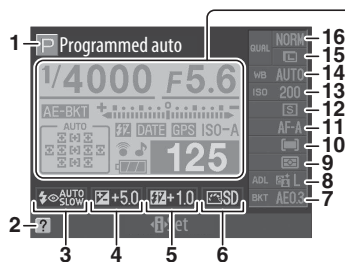
### 3 Select a background color.

Highlight a background color and press **OK**. Choose from blue, black, or orange (Classic) or green, black, or brown (Graphic).

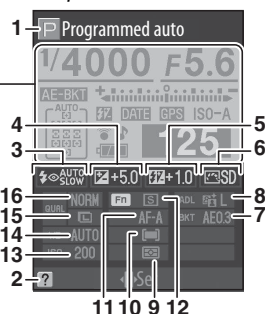


The “Classic” display is shown below.

Camera in normal orientation



Camera rotated 90° to shoot in tall (portrait) orientation



<b>1</b> Shooting mode	<b>12</b> Release mode .....	<b>22</b> “Beep” indicator .....
AUTO auto/	<b>13</b> ISO sensitivity .....	<b>23</b> Number of exposures
Ⓜ auto (flash off) .....	<b>14</b> White balance .....	remaining .....
Scene modes .....	<b>15</b> Image size .....	Capture mode indicator ....
P, S, A, and M modes .....	<b>16</b> Image quality .....	<b>24</b> GPS connection
<b>2</b> Help icon .....	<b>17</b> Bracketing indicator .....	indicator .....
<b>3</b> Flash mode .....	<b>18</b> Manual flash indicator.....	<b>25</b> Auto ISO sensitivity
<b>4</b> Exposure compensation.....	Flash compensation indicator	indicator .....
<b>5</b> Flash compensation .....	for optional flash units.....	<b>26</b> Date imprint indicator .....
<b>6</b> Picture Control.....	<b>19</b> Auto-area AF indicator .....	<b>27</b> Aperture (f-number) .....
<b>7</b> Bracketing increment .....	3D-tracking indicator .....	<b>28</b> Exposure indicator .....
<b>8</b> Active D-Lighting.....	Focus point.....	Exposure compensation
<b>9</b> Metering.....	<b>20</b> Eye-Fi connection	indicator .....
<b>10</b> AF-area mode .....	indicator .....	Bracketing progress indicator
<b>11</b> Focus mode .....	<b>21</b> Battery indicator .....	.....
		<b>29</b> Shutter speed.....



## Auto Information Display

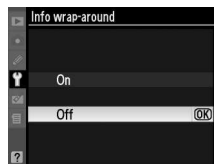
MENU button → Y setup menu

This option can be set separately for auto and scene modes and for **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes. If **On** is selected, the information display will appear after the shutter-release button is pressed halfway; if image review (☐ 147) is off, it will also be displayed immediately after shooting. Choose **On** if you find yourself frequently referring to the information display during shooting. If **Off** is selected, the information display can only be viewed by pressing the **Info** button.

## Info Wrap-around

MENU button → Y setup menu

If **On** is selected, the cursor will “wrap around” from one edge of the information display to the other.



## Video Mode

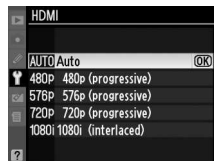
MENU button → Y setup menu

When connecting the camera to a television or VCR via the A/V out connector, be sure the camera video mode matches the device video standard (NTSC or PAL).

## HDMI

MENU button → Y setup menu

The camera is equipped with an HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) connector, allowing pictures to be played back on high-definition televisions or monitors using a type C cable (available separately from commercial suppliers). Before connecting the camera to high-definition device, choose an HDMI format. If **Auto** is selected, the camera will automatically select the appropriate format.



## Time Zone and Date

MENU button → Y setup menu

Change time zones, set the camera clock, choose the date display order, and turn daylight saving time on or off.

Option	Description
<b>Time zone</b>	Choose a time zone. The camera clock is automatically set to the time in the new time zone.
<b>Date and time</b>	Set the camera clock (☞ 20).
<b>Date format</b>	Choose the order in which the day, month, and year are displayed.
<b>Daylight saving time</b>	Turn daylight saving time on or off. The camera clock will automatically be advanced or set back one hour. The default setting is <b>Off</b> .

## Language

MENU button → Y setup menu

Choose a language for camera menus and messages. The following options are available:

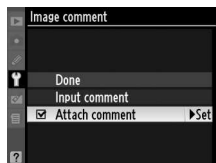
Option	Description	Option	Description	Option	Description
Dk Dansk	Danish	It Italiano	Italian	Sv Svenska	Swedish
De Deutsch	German	Nl Nederlands	Dutch	繁 中文(繁體)	Traditional Chinese
En English	English	No Norsk	Norwegian	简 中文(简体)	Simplified Chinese
Es Español	Spanish	Pl Polski	Polish	日 日本語	Japanese
Fi Suomi	Finnish	Pt Português	Portuguese	한 한글	Korean
Fr Français	French	Ru Русский	Russian		


## Image Comment

MENU button → Y setup menu

Add a comment to new photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed as metadata in ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX 2 (available separately; ☞ 202). The comment is also visible on the third shooting data page in the photo information display (☞ 120).

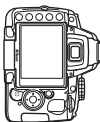
- **Done:** Save changes and return to the setup menu.
- **Input comment:** Input a comment as described on page 152. Comments can be up to 36 characters long.
- **Attach comment:** Select this option to attach the comment to all subsequent photographs. **Attach comment** can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing ►.



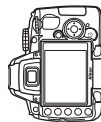
Photographs taken while **On** is selected contain information on camera orientation, allowing them to be rotated automatically during playback or when viewed in ViewNX or Capture NX 2 (available separately;  202). The following orientations are recorded:



*Landscape (wide) orientation*




*Camera rotated 90° clockwise*




*Camera rotated 90°  
counterclockwise*

Camera orientation is not recorded when **Off** is selected. Choose this option when panning or taking photographs with the lens pointing up or down.

### **Auto Image Rotation**

In continuous release mode ( 65), the orientation recorded for the first shot applies to all photographs in the same burst, even if camera orientation is changed during shooting.

### **Rotate Tall**

To automatically rotate “tall” (portrait-orientation) photographs for display during playback, select **On** for the **Rotate tall** option in the playback menu ( 147).



Acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off option in Capture NX 2 (available separately; for more information, see the Capture NX 2 manual).

**Image dust off ref photo** is available only when a CPU lens is mounted on the camera. A lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm is recommended. When using a zoom lens, zoom all the way in.

## 1 Choose a start option.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**. To exit without acquiring image dust off data, press **MENU**.



- **Start:** The message shown at right will be displayed and “rEF” will appear in the viewfinder.
- **Clean sensor and then start:** Select this option to clean the image sensor before starting. The message shown at right will be displayed and “rEF” will appear in the viewfinder when cleaning is complete.



### Image Sensor Cleaning

Dust off reference data recorded before image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken after image sensor cleaning is performed. Select **Clean sensor and then start** only if the dust off reference data will not be used with existing photographs.

## 2 Frame a featureless white object in the viewfinder.

With the lens about ten centimeters (four inches) from a well-lit, featureless white object, frame the object so that it fills the viewfinder and then press the shutter-release button halfway.

In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually.



### 3 Acquire dust off reference data.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data. The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed. Note that noise reduction will be performed if the subject is poorly lit, increasing recording times.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and the message shown at right will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from step 1.



#### Image Dust Off Reference Data

The same reference data can be used for photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures. Reference images can not be viewed using computer imaging software. A grid pattern is displayed when reference images are viewed on the camera.








## Eye-Fi Upload

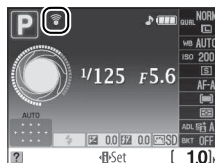
MENU button → Y setup menu

This option is displayed only when an Eye-Fi memory card (available separately from third-party suppliers) is inserted in the camera. Choose **Enable** to upload photographs to a preselected destination. Note that pictures will not be uploaded if signal strength is insufficient.

Observe all local laws concerning wireless devices and choose **Disable** where wireless devices are prohibited.

When an Eye-Fi card is inserted, its status is indicated by an icon in the information display:

- : Eye-Fi upload disabled.
- : Eye-Fi upload enabled but no pictures available for upload.
-  (static): Eye-Fi upload enabled; waiting to begin upload.
-  (animated): Eye-Fi upload enabled; uploading data.
- : **Disable** selected for **Eye-Fi upload** but camera unable to turn card off; see “Eye-Fi Cards,” below.



### Eye-Fi Cards

Eye-Fi cards may emit wireless signals when **Disable** is selected. If a warning is displayed in the monitor (🗨 222), turn the camera off and remove the card.

The camera can be used to turn Eye-Fi cards on and off, but may not support other Eye-Fi functions. Any support inquiries should be directed to the manufacturer.

### Supported Eye-Fi Cards

As of March 2009, the following 2 GB Eye-Fi cards can be used: Eye-Fi Card, Eye-Fi Home, Eye-Fi Share, and Eye-Fi Explore. Eye-Fi cards are for use only in the country of purchase.

## Firmware Version

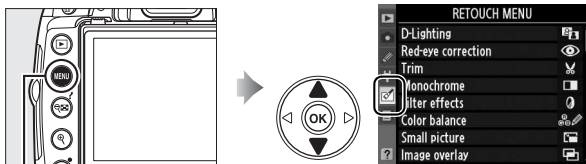
MENU button → Y setup menu

View the current camera firmware version.




















# The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies

To display the retouch menu, press **MENU** and select the  (retouch menu) tab.





MENU button

The retouch menu is used to create trimmed or retouched copies of the photographs on the memory card, and is only available when a memory card containing photographs is inserted in the camera. Movies can not be retouched.

Option		Option	
 <b>D-Lighting</b> <sup>1</sup>	176	 <b>Quick retouch</b> <sup>1</sup>	185
 <b>Red-eye correction</b> <sup>1</sup>	176	 <b>Straighten</b>	185
 <b>Trim</b>	177	 <b>Distortion control</b>	185
 <b>Monochrome</b> <sup>1</sup>	178	 <b>Fisheye</b>	185
 <b>Filter effects</b> <sup>1</sup>	178	 <b>Color outline</b>	186
 <b>Color balance</b> <sup>1</sup>	179	 <b>Perspective control</b>	186
 <b>Small picture</b>	180	 <b>Stop-motion movie</b> <sup>2</sup>	187
 <b>Image overlay</b> <sup>2</sup>	182	 <b>Side-by-side comparison</b> <sup>3</sup>	189
 <b>NEF (RAW) processing</b>	184		

<sup>1</sup> Not available with photographs taken with **Monochrome** selected for **Set Picture Control** or JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) images created with **Monochrome** selected for **Set Picture Control** (cross screen filter effects can be applied to monochrome images).


<sup>2</sup> Can only be selected by pressing MENU button and selecting  tab.

<sup>3</sup> Available only if  button is pressed in full-frame playback when a retouched image or original is displayed.

## Retouching Copies

Up to ten effects can in most cases be applied in succession to a single image, although with the exception of **Image overlay** each option can only be applied once (note that multiple edits may result in loss of detail). Options that can not be applied to the current image are grayed out and unavailable.

## Image Quality

Except in the case of copies created with **Trim**, **Small picture**, **Image overlay**, **NEF (RAW) processing**, and **Stop-motion movie**, copies created from JPEG images are the same size and quality as the original, while copies created from NEF (RAW) photos are saved as large fine-quality JPEG images. Time stamps added with Custom Setting d6 (**Date imprint**;  160) may however be cropped out or illegible depending on the retouch options used.

# Creating Retouched Copies

To create a retouched copy:

## 1 Display a photo full frame (116).

### **Retouch**

The camera may not be able to display or retouch images created with other devices.



## 2 Press **OK** to display the retouch menu.

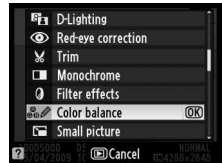
### **Monitor off Delay**

The monitor will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for the length of time selected for Custom Setting c2 (**Auto off timers**). The default is 12 s.



## 3 Display retouch options.


Highlight the desired item in the retouch menu and press **OK**.



## 4 Select retouch options.

For more information, see the section for the selected item. To return to full-frame playback without creating a retouched copy, press **▶**.

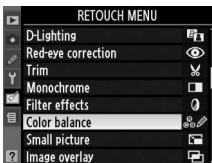
## 5 Create a retouched copy.

Press **OK** to create a retouched copy. Retouched copies are indicated by a  icon.



### **Creating Retouched Copies from the Retouch Menu**

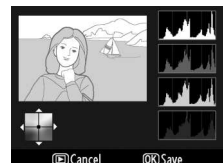
The photographs to be retouched can also be selected from the retouch menu.



Highlight an option and press **▶**.



Highlight a picture and press **OK**.



Create retouched copy of selected picture.



## D-Lighting

MENU button → retouch menu

D-Lighting brightens shadows, making it ideal for dark or backlit photographs.

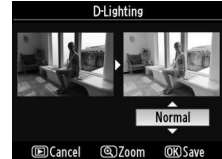


Before



After

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the amount of correction performed. The effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press to copy the photograph.



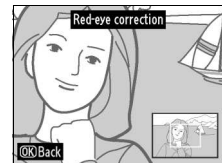
## Red-Eye Correction

MENU button → retouch menu

This option is used to correct “red-eye” caused by the flash, and is available only with photographs taken using the flash. The photograph selected for red-eye correction is previewed as shown at right. Confirm the effects of red-eye correction and create a copy as described in the following table. Note that red-eye correction may not always produce the expected results and may in very rare circumstances be applied to portions of the image that are not affected by red-eye; check the preview thoroughly before proceeding.



To	Use	Description
Zoom in		Press  button to zoom in,  button to zoom out. While photo is zoomed in, use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. Navigation window is displayed when zoom buttons or multi selector is pressed; area currently visible in monitor is indicated by yellow border. Press  to cancel zoom.
Zoom out		
View other areas of image		
Cancel zoom		
Create copy		If the camera detects red-eye in the selected photograph, a copy will be created that has been processed to reduce its effects. No copy will be created if the camera is unable to detect red-eye.



Create a cropped copy of the selected photograph. The selected photograph is displayed with the selected crop shown in yellow; create a cropped copy as described in the following table.



To	Use	Description
Increase size of crop		Press the  button to increase the size of the crop.
Reduce size of crop		Press the  button to reduce the size of the crop.
Change crop aspect ratio		Rotate the command dial to switch between aspect ratios of 3 : 2, 4 : 3, 5 : 4, 1 : 1, and 16 : 9.
Move crop		Use multi selector to move the crop to another area of the image.
Create copy		Save the current crop as a separate file.

## Trim: Image Quality and Size

Copies created from NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW) + JPEG photos have an image quality of JPEG fine ( 62); copies created from JPEG photos have the same image quality as the original. The size of the copy varies with crop size and aspect ratio.

Aspect ratio	Possible sizes
3 : 2	3,424 × 2,280, 2,560 × 1,704, 1,920 × 1,280, 1,280 × 856, 960 × 640, 640 × 424
4 : 3	3,424 × 2,568, 2,560 × 1,920, 1,920 × 1,440, 1,280 × 960, 960 × 720, 640 × 480
5 : 4	3,216 × 2,568, 2,400 × 1,920, 1,808 × 1,440, 1,200 × 960, 896 × 720, 608 × 480
1 : 1	2,560 × 2,560, 1,920 × 1,920, 1,440 × 1,440, 960 × 960, 720 × 720, 480 × 480
16 : 9	3,424 × 1,920, 2,560 × 1,440, 1,920 × 1,080, 1,280 × 720, 960 × 536, 640 × 360



## Monochrome

MENU button → retouch menu

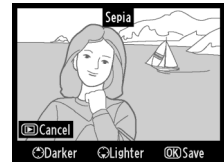
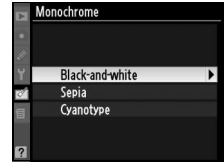
Copy photographs in **Black-and-white**, **Sepia**, or **Cyanotype** (blue and white monochrome).

Selecting **Sepia** or **Cyanotype** displays a preview of the selected image; press ▲ to increase color saturation, ▼ to decrease. Press OK to create a monochrome copy.

Increase saturation



Decrease saturation



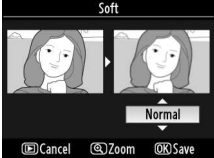
## Filter Effects

MENU button → retouch menu


Choose from the following filter effects. After adjusting filter effects as described below, press OK to copy the photograph.

Option	Description	
<b>Skylight</b>	Creates the effect of a skylight filter, making the picture less blue. The effect can be previewed in the monitor as shown at right.	
<b>Warm filter</b>	Creates a copy with warm tone filter effects, giving the copy a "warm" red cast. The effect can be previewed in the monitor.	
<b>Red intensifier</b>	Intensify reds ( <b>Red intensifier</b> ), greens ( <b>Green intensifier</b> ), or blues ( <b>Blue intensifier</b> ). Press the multi selector up to increase the effect, down to decrease.	
<b>Green intensifier</b>		
<b>Blue intensifier</b>		
<b>Cross screen</b>	<p>Add starburst effects to light sources.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Number of points:</b> Choose from four, six, or eight.</li> <li><b>Filter amount:</b> Choose the brightness of the light sources affected.</li> <li><b>Filter angle:</b> Choose the angle of the points.</li> <li><b>Length of points:</b> Choose the length of points.</li> <li><b>Confirm:</b> Preview the effects of the filter as shown at right. Press Q to preview the copy full frame.</li> <li><b>Save:</b> Create a retouched copy.</li> </ul>	

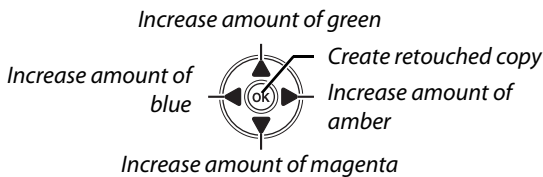
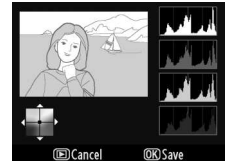


Option	Description
<p><b>Soft</b></p>	<p>Add a soft filter effect. Use the multi selector to choose from 1 (high), 2 (normal), or 3 (low).</p> 





## Color Balance

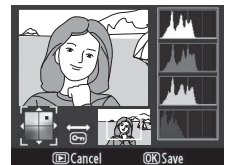
MENU button →  retouch menu

Use the multi selector to create a copy with modified color balance as shown below. The effect is displayed in the monitor together with red, green, and blue histograms (📖 118) giving the distribution of tones in the copy.



### Zoom

To zoom in on the image displayed in the monitor, press the  button. The histogram will be updated to show data only for the portion of the image displayed in the monitor. While the image is zoomed in, press the  (📖 118) button to toggle back and forth between color balance and zoom. When zoom is selected, you can zoom in and out with the  and  buttons and scroll the image with the multi selector.



Create a small copy of the selected picture. The following sizes are available:

Option	Description
<b>640×480</b>	Suited to television playback.
<b>320×240</b>	Suited to display on Web pages.
<b>160×120</b>	Suitable for e-mail.

The small picture option can be used during full-frame playback as described on page 175. The procedure for selecting pictures after choosing **Small picture** from the retouch menu, however, differs from that described at the beginning of this section: instead of selecting a single photograph and then choosing a picture size, the user selects a picture size first and then selects one or more photographs to copy at the selected size as described below.

Selecting **Small picture** from the retouch menu displays the menu shown in Step 1. Follow the steps below to create small copies of multiple pictures.

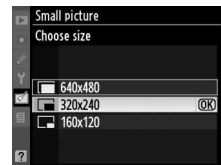
## 1 Select Choose size.

Highlight **Choose size** and press .



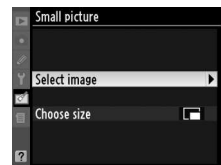
## 2 Choose the desired size.

Highlight desired size and press to select and return to the previous menu.



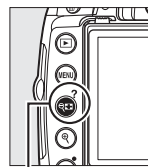
## 3 Choose Select image.

Highlight **Select image** and press .

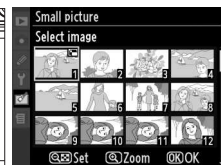


## 4 Select pictures.

Highlight pictures using the multi selector and press the button to select or deselect. Selected pictures are marked by an icon.



button



## 5 Press **OK** to complete the operation.

Press **OK**. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press **OK** to copy pictures at the selected size and return to playback. To exit without creating copies, highlight **No** and press **OK**, or press **MENU** to exit to the retouch menu.



### **Viewing Small Pictures**

Small pictures are indicated by a gray border. Playback zoom is not available when small pictures are displayed. Note that because small copies do not have the same aspect ratio as the original, the edges of the copy will be cropped out on its longest dimension.




Image overlay combines two existing NEF (RAW) photographs to create a single picture that is saved separately from the originals; the results, which make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor, are noticeably better than overlays created in an imaging application. The new picture is saved at current image quality and size settings; before creating an overlay, set image quality and size (☐ 62, 64; all options are available). To create an NEF (RAW) copy, choose an image quality of **NEF (RAW)**.

## 1 Select Image overlay.

Highlight **Image overlay** in the retouch menu and press ►. The dialog shown at right will be displayed, with **Image 1** highlighted.




## 2 Display NEF (RAW) images.

Press  to display a picture selection dialog listing only NEF (RAW) images created with this camera.




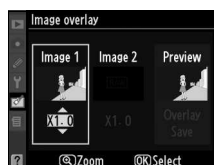
## 3 Highlight a photograph.

Use the multi selector to highlight the first photograph in the overlay. To view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the  button.



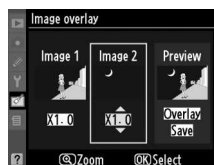
## 4 Select the highlighted photograph.

Press  to select the highlighted photograph and return to the preview display. The selected image will appear as **Image 1**.



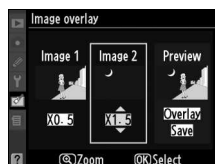
## 5 Select the second photograph.

Press ► to highlight **Image 2**. Repeat Steps 2–4 to select the second photo.



## 6 Set gain.

Highlight **Image 1** or **Image 2** and optimize exposure for the overlay by pressing ▲ or ▼ to set gain for the selected image to values between 0.1 and 2.0. Repeat for the second image. The default value is 1.0; selecting 0.5 cuts gain in half, while selecting 2.0 doubles gain. The effects of gain are visible in the **Preview** column.



## 7 Highlight the Preview column.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the **Preview** column.



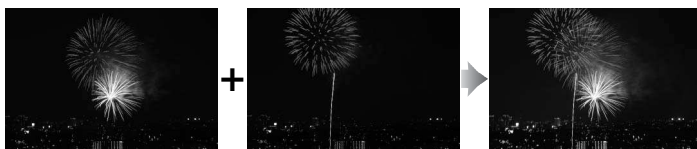
## 8 Preview the overlay.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight **Overlay** and press OK (to save the overlay without displaying a preview, highlight **Save** and press OK). To return to Step 6 and select new photos or adjust gain, press Back.



## 9 Save the overlay.

Press OK while the preview is displayed to save the overlay. After an overlay is created, the resulting image will be displayed full-frame in the monitor.



### Image Overlay

The overlay has the same photo info (including date of recording, metering, shutter speed, aperture, shooting mode, exposure compensation, focal length, and image orientation) and values for white balance and Picture Control as the photograph selected for **Image 1**.



Create JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) photographs.

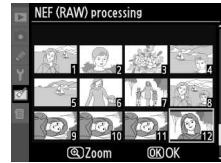
## 1 Select NEF (RAW) processing.

Highlight **NEF (RAW) processing** in the retouch menu and press **▶** to display a picture selection dialog listing only NEF (RAW) images created with this camera.



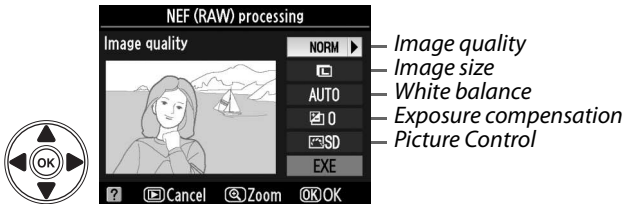
## 2 Select a photograph.

Use the multi selector to highlight a photograph (to view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the **Ⓚ** button). Press **Ⓞ** to select the highlighted photograph and proceed to the next step.



## 3 Adjust NEF (RAW) processing settings.

Choose image quality (**Ⓞ** 62), image size (**Ⓞ** 64), white balance (**Ⓞ** 96), exposure compensation (**Ⓞ** 90), and a Picture Control (**Ⓞ** 106) for the JPEG copy. Color space (**Ⓞ** 150) and high ISO noise reduction (**Ⓞ** 151) are set to the values currently selected in shooting mode. Note that white balance is not available with pictures created with image overlay and that exposure compensation increments differ from those used in shooting mode.




## 4 Copy the photograph.


Highlight **EXE** and press **Ⓞ** to create a JPEG copy of the selected photograph. The resulting image will be displayed full-frame in the monitor. To exit without copying the photograph, press the MENU button.

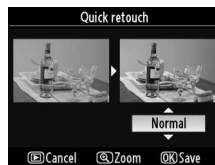


## Quick Retouch


MENU button →  retouch menu


Create copies with enhanced saturation and contrast. D-Lighting is applied as required to brighten dark or backlit subjects.

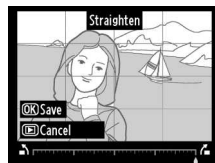
Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the amount of enhancement. The effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press  to copy the photograph.



## Straighten


MENU button →  retouch menu

Create a straightened copy of the selected image. Press ► to rotate the image clockwise by up to five degrees in increments of approximately 0.25 degrees, ◀ to rotate it counterclockwise (note that edges of the image will be trimmed to create a square copy). Press  to copy the photograph, or press ► to exit to playback without creating a copy.



## Distortion Control

MENU button →  retouch menu

Create copies with reduced peripheral distortion. Select **Auto** to let the camera correct distortion automatically and then make fine adjustments using the multi selector, or select **Manual** to reduce distortion manually (note that **Auto** is not available with photos taken using auto distortion control; see page 150). Press ► to reduce barrel distortion, ◀ to reduce pin-cushion distortion (note that greater amounts of distortion control result in more of the edges being cropped out). Press  to copy the photograph, or press ► to exit to playback without creating a copy.




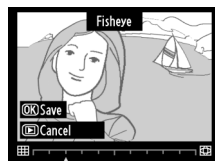
### Auto

**Auto** is for use only with pictures taken with type G and D lenses (PC, fisheye, and certain other lenses excluded). Results are not guaranteed with other lenses.


## Fisheye

MENU button →  retouch menu

Create copies that appear to have been taken with a fisheye lens. Press ► to increase the effect (this also increases the amount of that will be cropped out at the edges of the image), ◀ to reduce it. Press  to copy the photograph, or press ► to exit to playback without creating a copy.



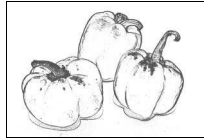
## Color Outline

MENU button →  retouch menu

Create an outline copy of a photograph to use as a base for painting. The effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press **OK** to copy the photograph.



*Before*



*After*



## Perspective Control

MENU button →  retouch menu

Create copies that reduce the effects of perspective taken from the base of a tall object. Use the multi selector to adjust perspective (note that greater amounts of perspective control result in more of the edges being cropped out). Press **OK** to copy the photograph, or press **▶** to exit to playback without creating a copy.



*Before*



*After*





Selecting **Stop-motion movie** from the retouch menu displays the menu shown in Step 1. Follow the steps below to create a stop-motion movie from photographs taken with the camera.

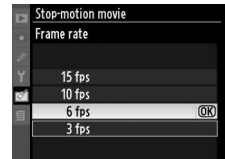
## 1 Choose the frame size.

Highlight **Frame size** and press **▶** to display a menu of frame size options. Highlight the desired frame size and press **OK**.



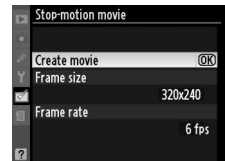
## 2 Choose the frame rate.

Highlight **Frame rate** and press **▶** to display a menu of frame rate options. Highlight the desired frame rate and press **OK**.



## 3 Select Create movie.

Highlight **Create movie** and press **OK**.



## 4 Select the first frame.

Press **◀** and **▶** to select a photograph for the first frame (keep the multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly through the photographs) and press **OK** to select.



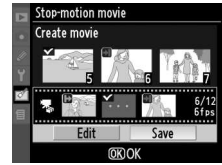
## 5 Select the last frame.

Use the multi selector to choose the last frame as described Step 4. The pictures in the movie are marked with **✓**; if the first frame is after the last frame, the frames in between will appear in the movie in reverse order. The movie can include up to 100 photographs.



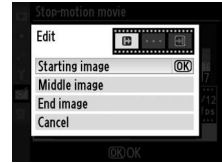
## 6 Select **Save**.

The menu shown at right will be displayed; if no further edits are necessary, highlight **Save** and press **OK** to proceed to Step 7.



To edit the movie, highlight **Edit** and press **OK**. The following options will be displayed:

- **Starting image:** Choose a new starting frame.
- **Middle image:** Remove frames from the middle of the movie. Press **◀** and **▶** to highlight a photo, **▲** or **▼** to remove the **✓** icon. Pictures from which the **✓** has been removed will be removed from the movie when you press **OK**.
- **End image:** Choose a new end frame.
- **Cancel:** Exit without making further changes.



## 7 Save the movie.

The menu shown at right will be displayed; highlight **Save** and press **OK** to save the movie. To preview the movie, select **Preview**. The movie can be paused, rewind, or fast-forwarded during the preview. To choose a new frame rate, select **Frame rate**; to edit the movie as described in Step 6, select **Edit**.



### **✓ Stop-motion Movies**

Stop-motion movies can not include cropped copies, small copies, or images created with other devices.

### **📄 Viewing Stop-motion Movies**

Stop-motion movies are marked with a **📄** icon in full-frame playback. To view a stop-motion movie, display it in full-frame playback and press **OK**.

Stop-motion files are named as described on page 63.




## Side-by-Side Comparison

Compare retouched copies to the original photographs. This option is only available if the **OK** button is pressed to display the retouch menu when a copy or original is played back full frame.

### ■ Making a Side-by-Side Comparison

#### 1 Select a picture.

Select a retouched copy (shown by a  icon) or a photograph that has been retouched in full-frame playback and press **OK**.



#### 2 Select Side-by-side comparison.

Highlight **Side-by-side comparison** in the retouch menu and press **OK**.

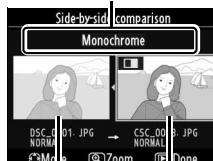


#### 3 Compare the copy with the original.

The source image is displayed on the left, the retouched copy on the right, with the options used to create the copy listed at the top of the display. Press **◀** or **▶** to switch between the source image and the retouched copy. To view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the **Q** button. If the copy was created from two images using **Image overlay**, press **▲** or **▼** to view the other source image. If multiple copies exist for the current source image, press **▲** or **▼** to view the other copies. To exit to playback mode, press the **▶** button, or press **OK** to return to playback with the highlighted image displayed.




*Options used to create copy*





*Source image Retouched copy*

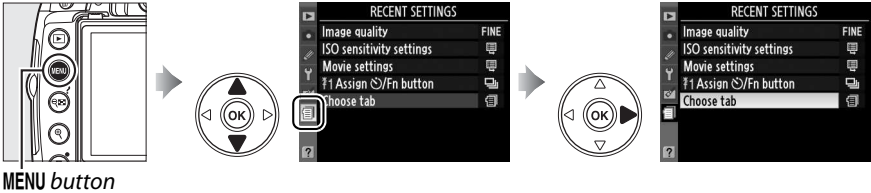
#### Side-by-Side Comparison

The source image will not be displayed if the copy was created from a photograph that has since been deleted or that was protected when the copy was made ( 125).



# Recent Settings/ My Menu

The camera offers a choice of two custom menus: a *recent settings menu* consisting of the twenty most recently used settings, added to the top of the menu in the order they are used, and *My Menu*, a customized list of options from the playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, and retouch menus. To display the custom menu, press MENU and select the custom menu tab ( or , depending on whether **Recent settings** or **My Menu** is currently selected for **Choose tab**).

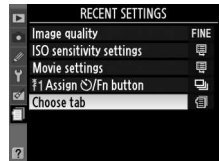


## Choose Tab: Choosing a Custom Menu


Both the recent settings menu and My Menu contain a **Choose tab** option for choosing the menu displayed. To switch back and forth between the recent settings menu and My Menu, follow the steps below.

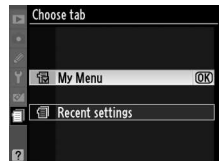
### 1 Select Choose tab.

In the  RECENT SETTINGS menu or  MY MENU, highlight **Choose tab** and press .






### 2 Select the desired menu.

Highlight **Recent settings** or **My Menu** and press . The selected menu will be displayed.



## Recent Settings: Viewing Recent Settings

The recent settings menu lists the twenty most recently used settings. Press  or  to highlight an option and press  to select.



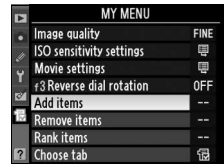
# **My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu**

The **My Menu** option can be used to create and edit a customized list of up to 20 options from the playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, and retouch menus. Options can be added, deleted, and reordered as described below.

## ■ ■ **Adding Options to My Menu**

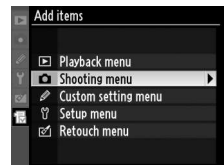
### 1 **Select Add items.**

In My Menu, highlight **Add items** and press ►.




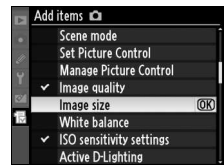
### 2 **Select a menu.**

Highlight the name of the menu containing the option you wish to add and press ►.



### 3 **Select an item.**

Highlight the desired menu item and press OK. Items currently in My Menu are indicated by a checkmark; items indicated by a  icon can not be selected.



### 4 **Position the new item.**

Press ▲ or ▼ to move the new item up or down in My Menu. Press OK to add the new item.

Repeat steps 1–4 to select additional items.



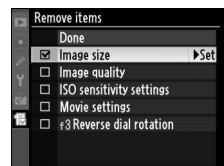
## ■ ■ **Deleting Options from My Menu**

### 1 **Select Remove items.**

In My Menu, highlight **Remove items** and press ►.

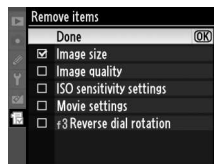
### 2 **Select items.**

Highlight items and press ► to select or deselect. Selected items are indicated by a check mark.



### 3 Select Done.

Highlight **Done** and press **OK**.



### 4 Delete the selected items.

A confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press **OK** to delete the selected items.



#### **Deleting Items in My Menu**

To delete the item currently highlighted in My Menu, press the **W** button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press **W** again to remove the selected item from My Menu.

## ■■ Reordering Options in My Menu

### 1 Select Rank items.

In My Menu, highlight **Rank items** and press **▶**.

### 2 Select an item.

Highlight the item you wish to move and press **OK**.



### 3 Position the item.

Press **▲** or **▼** to move the item up or down in My Menu and press **OK**. Repeat Steps 2–3 to reposition additional items.





# Technical Notes

Read this chapter for information on compatible accessories, cleaning and storing the camera, and what to do if an error message is displayed or you encounter problems using the camera.

<b>Compatible Lenses</b> .....	<b>194</b>
Compatible CPU Lenses.....	194
Compatible Non-CPU Lenses.....	195
<b>Optional Flash Units (Speedlights)</b> .....	<b>198</b>
The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS).....	198
<b>Other Accessories</b> .....	<b>202</b>
Approved Memory Cards .....	203
Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter .....	204
<b>Caring for the Camera</b> .....	<b>205</b>
Storage.....	205
Cleaning .....	205
The Low-Pass Filter .....	206
<b>Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions</b> .....	<b>210</b>
<b>Available Settings</b> .....	<b>212</b>
<b>Memory Card Capacity</b> .....	<b>215</b>
<b>Exposure Program</b> .....	<b>216</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>217</b>
Display .....	217
Shooting (All Modes) .....	218
Shooting (P, S, A, M).....	219
Playback .....	220
Miscellaneous.....	220
<b>Error Messages</b> .....	<b>221</b>
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>224</b>
Battery Life.....	231



# Compatible Lenses

## Compatible CPU Lenses

Autofocus is available with AF-S and AF-I CPU lenses only; autofocus is not supported with other autofocus (AF) lenses. IX NIKKOR lenses can not be used. The features available with compatible CPU lenses are listed below:

Lens/accessory	Camera setting		Focus		Mode			Metering	
	AF	MF (with electronic rangefinder)	MF	Auto and scene modes; P, S, A	☑		☑		
					M	3D	Color	+	
AF-S, AF-I NIKKOR <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	
Other type G or D AF NIKKOR <sup>1</sup>	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	
PC-E NIKKOR series	—	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓ <sup>3</sup>	—	✓ <sup>2,3</sup>	
PC Micro 85mm f/2.8D <sup>4</sup>	—	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓	—	✓	✓	—	✓ <sup>2,3</sup>	
AF-S/AF-I teleconverter <sup>5</sup>	✓ <sup>6</sup>	✓ <sup>6</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	
Other AF NIKKOR (except lenses for F3AF)	—	✓ <sup>7</sup>	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	
AI-P NIKKOR	—	✓ <sup>8</sup>	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	

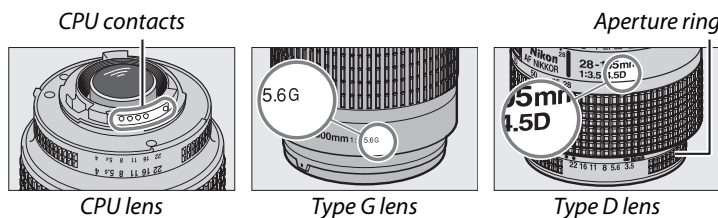
- 1 Use AF-S or AF-I lenses to get the most from your camera. Vibration Reduction (VR) supported with VR lenses.
- 2 Spot metering meters selected focus point (☐ 88).
- 3 Can not be used with shifting or tilting.
- 4 The camera's exposure metering and flash control systems may not function as expected when the lens is shifted and/or tilted or an aperture other than the maximum aperture is used.
- 5 AF-S or AF-I lens required.
- 6 With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
- 7 When AF 80–200mm f/2.8, AF 35–70mm f/2.8, AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 (New), or AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 lenses are zoomed all the way in at the minimum focus distance, the in-focus indicator may be displayed when the image on the matte screen in the viewfinder is not in focus. Focus manually until image in viewfinder is in focus.
- 8 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

### Identifying AF-S and AF-I Lenses

AF-S lenses have names beginning with **AF-S**, AF-I lenses names beginning with **AF-I**.

### Identifying CPU and Type G and D Lenses

CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts, type G and D lenses by a letter on the lens barrel. Type G lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring.



### Lens f-number

The f-number given in lens names is the maximum aperture of the lens.



# Compatible Non-CPU Lenses

Non-CPU lenses may only be used when the camera is in mode **M**. Selecting another mode disables the shutter release. Aperture must be adjusted manually via the lens aperture ring and the camera metering system, i-TTL flash control, and other features requiring a CPU lens can not be used. Some non-CPU lenses can not be used; see “Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses,” below.

Lens/accessory	Camera setting	Focus		Mode		Metering
	AF	MF (with electronic rangefinder)	MF	Auto and scene modes; P, S, A	M	☉, ☉, ☐
AI-, AI-modified NIKKOR or Nikon Series E lenses	—	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—
Medical NIKKOR 120mm f/4	—	✓	✓	—	✓ <sup>2,3</sup>	—
Reflex NIKKOR	—	—	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—
PC NIKKOR	—	✓ <sup>4</sup>	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—
AI-type Teleconverter	—	✓ <sup>5</sup>	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—
PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment <sup>6</sup>	—	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—
Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)	—	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—

1 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

2 Electronic analog exposure display can not be used.

3 Can be used at shutter speeds slower than flash sync speed by one step or more.

4 Can not be used with shifting or tilting.

5 With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

6 Attach in vertical orientation (can be used in horizontal orientation once attached).

## ☑ Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses can NOT be used with the D5000:

- TC-16AS AF teleconverter
- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400mm f/4.5, 600mm f/5.6, 800mm f/8, 1200mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6mm f/5.6, 7.5mm f/5.6, 8mm f/8, OP 10mm f/5.6)
- 2.1cm f/4
- Extension Ring K2
- 180–600mm f/8 ED (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- 360–1200mm f/11 ED (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- AF lenses for the F3AF (AF 80mm f/2.8, AF 200mm f/3.5 ED, AF Teleconverter TC-16)
- PC 28mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35mm f/3.5 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/6.3 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/11 (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- Reflex 2000mm f/11 (serial numbers 200111–200310)



### **The Built-in Flash**

The built-in flash can be used with lenses with focal lengths of 18–300 mm, although in some cases the flash may be unable to entirely light the subject at some ranges or focal lengths due to shadows cast by the lens, while lenses that block the subject's view of the red-eye reduction lamp may interfere with red-eye reduction. Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows. The flash has a minimum range of 60 cm and can not be used in the macro range of macro zoom lenses. The flash may be unable to light the entire subject with the following lenses at ranges less than those given below:

Lens	Zoom position	Minimum range
AF-S DX NIKKOR 10–24mm f/3.5–4.5G ED	24 mm	2.5 m/8 ft. 2 in.
AF-S DX 12–24mm f/4G ED	20 mm	3.0 m/9 ft. 10 in.
	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S DX NIKKOR 16–85 mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR	Under 24 mm	—
AF-S 17–35mm f/2.8D ED	24 mm	2.0 m/6 ft. 7 in.
	28 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S DX 17–55mm f/2.8G ED	28 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.
	35 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF 18–35mm f/3.5–4.5D ED	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S DX 18–70mm f/3.5–4.5G ED	18 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–105mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR	18 mm	2.5 m/8 ft. 2 in.
AF-S DX 18–135mm f/3.5–5.6G ED	18 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S DX VR 18–200mm f/3.5–5.6G ED	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	24 mm	2.5 m/8 ft. 2 in.
AF 20–35mm f/2.8D	28 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	35 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.
AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED	50 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
	24 mm	1.0 m/3 ft. 3 in.
AF-S VR 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G ED	35 mm	1.5 m/4 ft. 11 in.
AF-S VR 200–400mm f/4G ED	250 mm	2.5 m/8 ft. 2 in.
	350 mm	2.0 m/6 ft. 7 in.
PC-E NIKKOR 24mm f/3.5 ED *	24 mm	3.0 m/9 ft. 10 in.

\* When not shifted or tilted.

When used with the AF-S NIKKOR 14–24 mm f/2.8G ED, the flash will be unable to light the entire subject at all ranges.

### **Dark Edges in the Viewfinder**

You may notice darkening of the edges of the image in the viewfinder with some lenses. This has no effect on photographs.



### ✓ AF-Assist Illumination

AF-assist illumination is not available with the following lenses:

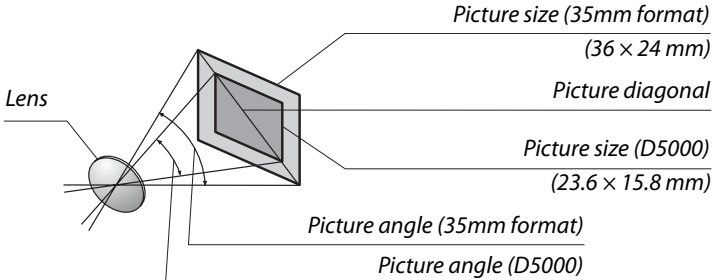
- AF-S NIKKOR 14–24 mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S VR 70–200 mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S 80–200 mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S VR 200 mm f/2G ED
- AF-S VR 200–400 mm f/4G ED

At ranges under 1 m (3 ft. 3 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF-S 17–35 mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 24–70 mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S DX 17–55 mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S VR 24–120 mm f/3.5–5.6G ED
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–105 mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S 28–70 mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S DX VR 18–200 mm f/3.5–5.6G ED
- AF-S VR Micro 105 mm f/2.8G ED

### ✍ Calculating Picture Angle

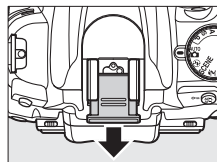
The size of the area exposed by a 35 mm camera is  $36 \times 24$  mm. The size of the area exposed by the D5000, in contrast, is  $23.6 \times 15.8$  mm, meaning that the picture angle of a 35 mm camera is approximately 1.5 times that of the D5000. The approximate focal length of lenses for the D5000 in 35 mm format can be calculated by multiplying the focal length of the lens by about 1.5.



# Optional Flash Units (Speedlights)

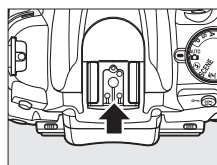
The camera supports the Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS) and can be used with CLS-compatible flash units. Optional flash units can be attached directly to the camera accessory shoe as described below. The accessory shoe is equipped with a safety lock for flash units with a locking pin, such as the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400.

## 1 Remove the accessory shoe cover.



## 2 Mount the flash unit on the accessory shoe.

See the manual provided with the flash unit for details. The built-in flash will not fire when an optional flash unit is attached.



### **The AS-15 Sync Terminal Adapter**

When the AS-15 sync terminal adapter (available separately) is mounted on the camera accessory shoe, flash accessories can be connected via a sync cable.

### **Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories**

*Use only Nikon flash units.* Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon flash unit not listed in this section, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.

## The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)

Nikon's advanced Creative Lighting System (CLS) offers improved communication between the camera and compatible flash units for improved flash photography.




## ■ CLS-Compatible Flash Units

The camera can be used with the following CLS-compatible flash units:


- **The SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200:**

Flash unit		SB-900 <sup>1</sup>	SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	SB-R200 <sup>2</sup>
Guide No. <sup>3</sup>	ISO 100	34/111	38/125	30/98	21/69	10/32
	ISO 200	48/157	53/175	42/138	30/98	14/49

- 1 If a color filter is attached to the SB-900 when **AUTO** or  (flash) is selected for white balance, the camera will automatically detect the filter and adjust white balance appropriately.
- 2 Controlled remotely using optional SB-900, SB-800 flash unit or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander.
- 3 m/ft., 20 °C (68 °F), SB-900, SB-800 and SB-600 at 35 mm zoom head position; SB-900 with standard illumination.

- **The SU-800 wireless speedlight commander:** When mounted on a CLS-compatible camera, the SU-800 can be used as a commander for remote SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash units. The SU-800 itself is not equipped with a flash.

The following features are available with the above flash units:

Flash mode/feature	Flash unit				Advanced Wireless Lighting				
	SB-900 SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	Commander		Remote			
				SB-900 SB-800	SU-800 <sup>1</sup>	SB-900 SB-800	SB-600	SB-R200	
i-TTL i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓ <sup>3</sup>	✓ <sup>4</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AA Auto aperture <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>5</sup>	—	—	✓ <sup>6</sup>	✓ <sup>6</sup>	✓ <sup>6</sup>	—	—	—
A Non-TTL auto	✓ <sup>5</sup>	—	—	✓ <sup>6</sup>	—	✓ <sup>6</sup>	—	—	—
GN Distance-priority manual	✓	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
M Manual	✓	✓	✓ <sup>7</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
RPT Repeating flash	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—
AF-assist for multi-area AF <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	—	—	—	—
Flash Color Information Communication	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—	—	—
REAR Rear-curtain sync	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
 Red-eye reduction	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—	—	—
Auto zoom	✓	✓	—	✓	—	—	—	—	—
Auto ISO sensitivity control (□ 149)	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—	—	—	—


- 1 Only available when SU-800 is used to control other flash units.
- 2 CPU lens required.
- 3 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering or when selected with flash unit.
- 4 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering.
- 5 Selected with flash unit.
- 6 Auto aperture (AA) is used regardless of mode selected with flash unit.
- 7 Can be selected with camera.

### Guide Number

To calculate the range of the flash at full power, divide the Guide Number by the aperture. For example, at ISO 100 the SB-800 has a Guide Number of 38 m or 125 ft. (35 mm zoom head position); its range at an aperture of f/5.6 is  $38 \div 5.6$  or about 6.8 meters (or in feet,  $125 \div 5.6 =$  approximately 23 ft. 7 in.). For each twofold increase in ISO sensitivity, multiply the Guide Number by the square root of two (approximately 1.4).

## ■ ■ Other Flash Units

The following flash units can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes.

Speedlight	SB-80DX, SB-28DX, SB-28, SB-26, SB-25, SB-24	SB-50DX <sup>1</sup>	SB-30, SB-27 <sup>2</sup> , SB-22S, SB-22, SB-20, SB-16B, SB-15	SB-23, SB-29 <sup>3</sup> , SB-21B <sup>3</sup> , SB-29S <sup>3</sup>
<b>A</b> Non-TTL auto	✓	—	✓	—
<b>M</b> Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓
 Repeating flash	✓	—	—	—
<b>REAR</b> Rear-curtain sync <sup>4</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓

1 In **P**, **S**, **A**, and **M** modes, lower built-in flash and use optional flash unit only.











2 Flash mode is automatically set to TTL and shutter-release is disabled. Set flash unit to **A** (non-TTL auto flash).

3 Autofocus is available with AF-S VR Micro-NIKKOR ED 105mm f/2.8G and AF-S Micro-NIKKOR 60mm f/2.8G ED lenses only.

4 Available when camera is used to select flash mode.

### ✓ Notes on Optional Flash Units


Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the flash unit supports CLS, refer to the section on CLS-compatible digital SLR cameras. The D5000 is not included in the “digital SLR” category in the SB-80DX, SB-28DX, and SB-50DX manuals.

If an optional flash unit is attached in shooting modes other than , the flash will fire with every shot even in modes in which the built-in flash can not be used (, , , , , , , , and ).

i-TTL flash control can be used at ISO sensitivities between 200 and 3200. At values over 3200, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings. If the flash-ready indicator blinks for about three seconds after a photograph is taken, the flash has fired at full power and the photograph may be underexposed.

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.



In i-TTL, use the flash panel or bounce adapter provided with the flash unit. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.



If the controls on the optional SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SU-800 flash unit are used to set flash compensation,  will appear in the information display.

**✓ Notes on Optional Flash Units (Continued)**

The SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400 provide red-eye reduction, while the SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SU-800 provide AF-assist illumination with the following restrictions:

- **SB-900:** Active AF-assist illumination is available for all focus points; with 17–135 mm AF lenses, however, autofocus is not available with the focus points shown in gray.

		
<i>17–105 mm</i>		<i>106–135 mm</i>
- **SB-800, SB-600 and SU-800:** With 24–105 mm AF lenses, active AF-assist illumination is not available with the focus points shown in gray.

		
<i>24–34 mm</i>		<i>35–105 mm</i>

With other flash units, the camera AF-assist illuminator is used for AF-assist illumination and red-eye reduction.



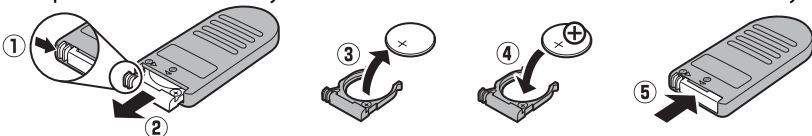
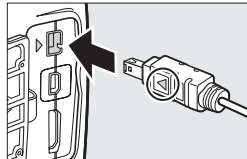
# Other Accessories

At the time of writing, the following accessories were available for the D5000.

<b>Power sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Rechargeable Li-ion Battery EN-EL9a</b> (☞ 16–17): Additional EN-EL9a batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon service representatives. The EN-EL9a can be recharged using an MH-23 quick charger. EN-EL9 batteries can also be used.</li> <li>• <b>Quick Charger MH-23</b> (☞ 16): The MH-23 can be used to recharge EN-EL9a and EN-EL9 batteries.</li> <li>• <b>Power Connector EP-5, AC Adapter EH-5a</b>: These accessories can be used to power the camera for extended periods (EH-5 AC adapters can also be used). The EP-5 is required to connect the camera to the EH-5a or EH-5; see page 204 for details.</li> </ul>
<b>Filters</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nikon filters can be divided into three types: screw-on, slip-in, and rear-interchange. Use Nikon filters; filters manufactured by other makers may interfere with autofocus or the electronic rangefinder.</li> <li>• The D5000 can not be used with linear polarizing filters. Use the C-PL circular polarizing filter instead.</li> <li>• The NC and L37C filters are recommended for protecting the lens.</li> <li>• To prevent moiré, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame.</li> <li>• Center-weighted metering is recommended with filters with exposure factors (filter factors) over <math>1 \times</math> (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4, ND4S, ND8, ND8S, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12). See the filter manual for details.</li> </ul>
<b>Viewfinder eyepiece accessories</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>DK-20C Eyepiece Correction Lenses</b>: Lenses are available with diopters of <math>-5</math>, <math>-4</math>, <math>-3</math>, <math>-2</math>, <math>0</math>, <math>+0.5</math>, <math>+1</math>, <math>+2</math>, and <math>+3 \text{ m}^{-1}</math> when the camera diopter adjustment control is in the neutral position (<math>-1 \text{ m}^{-1}</math>). Use eyepiece correction lenses only if the desired focus can not be achieved with the built in diopter adjustment control (<math>-1.7</math> to <math>+0.7 \text{ m}^{-1}</math>). Test eyepiece correction lenses before purchase to ensure that the desired focus can be achieved. The rubber eyecup can not be used with eyepiece correction lenses.</li> </ul>
<b>Optional flash units</b> (☞ 198)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Nikon Speedlights SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400</b></li> <li>• <b>Nikon Wireless Remote Speedlight SB-R200</b></li> <li>• <b>Wireless Speedlight Commander SU-800</b></li> </ul>
<b>Software</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Capture NX 2</b>: A complete photo editing package.</li> <li>• <b>Camera Control Pro 2</b>: Control the camera remotely from a computer and save photographs directly to the computer hard disk.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Use the latest versions of Nikon software. Most Nikon software offers an auto update feature when the computer is connected to the Internet. See the websites listed on page xvi for the latest information on supported operating systems.</p>
<b>Body cap</b>	<p>The body cap keeps the mirror, viewfinder screen, and low-pass filter free of dust when a lens is not in place.</p>





<b>Remote controls</b>	<p><b>ML-L3 wireless remote control</b> (☐ 67): Use as a remote shutter release for self-portraits or to prevent blur caused by camera shake. The ML-L3 uses a 3 V CR2025 battery.</p>  <p>Pressing the battery-chamber latch to the right (①), insert a fingernail into the gap and open the battery chamber (②). Ensure that the battery is inserted in the correct orientation (④).</p>
<b>Accessory terminal accessories</b>	<p>The D5000 is equipped with an accessory terminal for MC-DC2 remote cords (☐ 86) and GP-1 GPS units (☐ 114), which connect with the ◀ mark on the connector aligned with the ▶ mark next to the accessory terminal as shown at right (to access the accessory terminal, open the connector cover; close the cover when the terminal is not in use).</p> 

## Approved Memory Cards

The following SD memory cards have been tested and approved for use in the D5000. All cards of the designated make and capacity can be used, regardless of speed.

<b>SanDisk</b>	512 MB, 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 8 GB†, 16 GB†
<b>Toshiba</b>	512 MB, 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 8 GB†, 16 GB†, 32 GB†
<b>Panasonic</b>	512 MB, 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 6 GB†, 8 GB†, 12 GB†, 16 GB†, 32 GB†
<b>Lexar Media</b>	512 MB, 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 8 GB†
	<b>Platinum II:</b> 512 MB, 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 8 GB† <b>Professional:</b> 1 GB, 2 GB*, 4 GB†, 8 GB†

\* If card will be used with card reader or other device, check that the device supports 2GB cards.

† SDHC compliant. If card will be used with card reader or other device, check that the device supports SDHC.



Other cards have not been tested. For more details on the above cards, please contact the manufacturer.

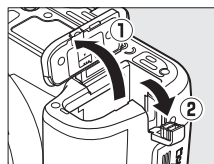


# Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter

Turn the camera off before attaching an optional power connector and AC adapter.

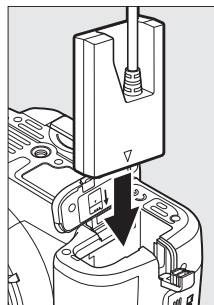
## 1 Ready the camera.

Open the battery-chamber (①) and power connector (②) covers.



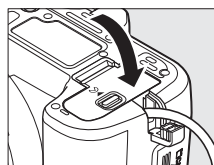
## 2 Insert the EP-5 power connector.

Be sure to insert the connector in the correct orientation.




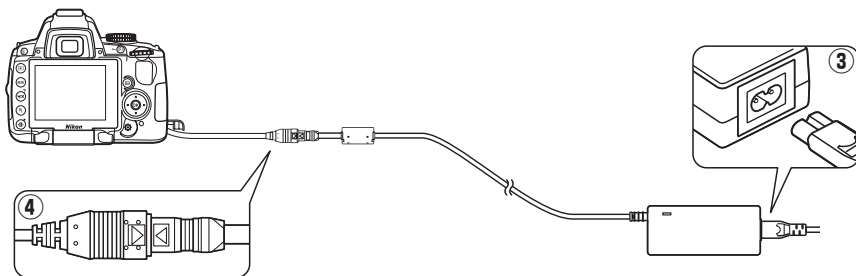
## 3 Close the battery-chamber cover.

Position the power connector cable so that it passes through the power connector slot and close the battery-chamber cover.



## 4 Connect the AC adapter.

Connect the AC adapter power cable to the AC socket on AC adapter (③) and the EP-5 power cable to the DC socket (④). A  icon is displayed in the monitor when the camera is powered by the AC adapter and power connector.



# Caring for the Camera

## Storage

When the camera will not be used for an extended period, return the monitor to the storage position, remove the battery, and store the battery in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:

- are poorly ventilated or subject to humidities of over 60%
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50 °C (122 °F) or below –10 °C (14 °F)

## Cleaning

<b>Camera body</b>	Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off sand or salt with a cloth lightly dampened in distilled water and dry thoroughly. <b>Important:</b> <i>Dust or other foreign matter inside the camera may cause damage not covered under warranty.</i>
<b>Lens, mirror, and viewfinder</b>	These glass elements are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.
<b>Monitor</b>	Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.

*Do not use alcohol, thinner, or other volatile chemicals.*

### **Servicing the Camera and Accessories**

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional Speedlights, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.



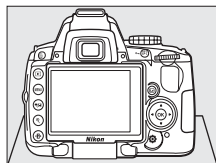
# The Low-Pass Filter

The image sensor that acts as the camera's picture element is fitted with a low-pass filter to prevent moiré. If you suspect that dirt or dust on the filter is appearing in photographs, you can clean the filter using the **Clean image sensor** option in the setup menu. The filter can be cleaned at any time using the **Clean now** option, or cleaning can be performed automatically when the camera is turned on or off.

## ■ ■ "Clean Now"

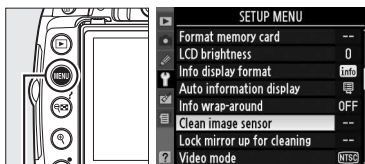
### 1 Place the camera base down.

Image sensor cleaning is most effective when the camera is placed base down as shown at right.



### 2 Display the Clean image sensor menu.

Press the MENU button to display the menus. Highlight **Clean image sensor** in the setup menu and press ►.



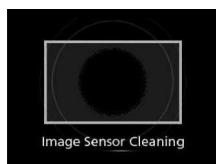
MENU button

### 3 Select Clean now.

Highlight **Clean now** and press **OK**.



The message shown at right will be displayed while cleaning is in progress.



## ■ “Clean at Startup/Shutdown”

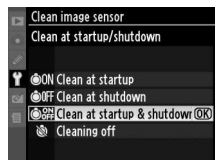
### 1 Select **Clean at startup/shutdown**.

Display the **Clean image sensor** menu as described in Step 2 on the previous page. Highlight **Clean at startup/shutdown** and press ►.



### 2 Select an option.

Highlight one of the following options and press **OK**.



Option	Description
<b>Clean at startup</b>	The image sensor is automatically cleaned each time the camera is turned on.
<b>Clean at shutdown</b>	The image sensor is automatically cleaned during shutdown each time the camera is turned off.
<b>Clean at startup &amp; shutdown</b>	The image sensor is cleaned automatically at startup and at shutdown.
<b>Cleaning off</b>	Automatic image sensor cleaning off.

#### **Image Sensor Cleaning**

Using camera controls interrupts image sensor cleaning. Image sensor cleaning may not be performed at startup if the flash is on.

Cleaning is performed by vibrating the image sensor. If dust can not be fully removed using the options in the **Clean image sensor** menu, clean the image sensor manually (📖 208) or consult a Nikon-authorized service representative.

If image sensor cleaning is performed several times in succession, image sensor cleaning may be temporarily disabled to protect the camera's internal circuitry. Cleaning can be performed again after a short wait.



## Manual Cleaning

If foreign matter can not be removed from the low-pass filter using the **Clean image sensor** option in the setup menu (☐ 206), the filter can be cleaned manually as described below. Note, however, that the filter is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that the filter be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel.


### 1 Charge the battery or connect an AC adapter.

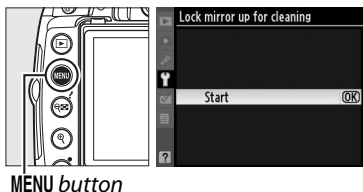
A reliable power source is required when inspecting or cleaning the low-pass filter. Turn the camera off and insert a fully-charged EN-EL9a battery or connect an optional EP-5 power connector and EH-5a AC adapter.

### 2 Remove the lens.

Turn the camera off and remove the lens.

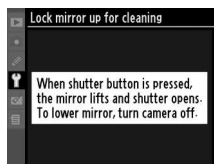
### 3 Select Lock mirror up for cleaning.

Turn the camera on and press the **MENU** button to display the menus. Highlight **Lock mirror up for cleaning** in the setup menu and press ► (note that this option is not available at battery levels of  or below).



### 4 Press **OK**.

The message shown at right will be displayed in the monitor. To restore normal operation without inspecting the low-pass filter, turn the camera off.



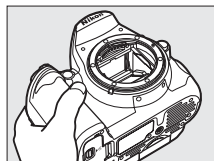
### 5 Raise the mirror.

Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the low-pass filter.



### 6 Examine the low-pass filter.

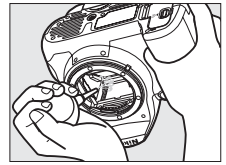
Holding the camera so that light falls on the low-pass filter, examine the filter for dust or lint. If no foreign objects are present, proceed to Step 8.



---

## 7 Clean the filter.

Remove any dust and lint from the filter with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the filter. Dirt that can not be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the filter.



---

## 8 Turn the camera off.

The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap.

### Use a Reliable Power Source

The shutter curtain is delicate and easily damaged. If the camera powers off while the mirror is raised, the curtain will close automatically. To prevent damage to the curtain, observe the following precautions:

- Do not turn the camera off or remove or disconnect the power source while the mirror is raised.
- If the battery runs low while the mirror is raised, a beep will sound and the self-timer lamp will blink to warn that the shutter curtain will close and the mirror will be lowered after about two minutes. End cleaning or inspection immediately.

### Foreign Matter on the Low-Pass Filter

Nikon takes every possible precaution to prevent foreign matter from coming into contact with the low-pass filter during production and shipping. The D5000, however, is designed to be used with interchangeable lenses, and foreign matter may enter the camera when lenses are removed or exchanged. Once inside the camera, this foreign matter may adhere to the low-pass filter, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the body cap. Avoid exchanging lenses in dusty environments.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the low-pass filter, clean the filter as described above, or have the filter cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the filter can be retouched using Capture NX 2 (available separately; □ 202) or the clean image options available in some third-party imaging applications.



# Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions

**Do not drop:** The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

**Keep dry:** This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

**Avoid sudden changes in temperature:** Sudden changes in temperature, such as those that occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

**Keep away from strong magnetic fields:** Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product's internal circuitry.

**Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun:** Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun or other strong light source for an extended period. Intense light may cause the image sensor to deteriorate or produce a white blur effect in photographs.

**Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source:** Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.

**Cleaning:** When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to gently remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened in pure water and then dry the camera thoroughly.

The lens and mirror are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains from the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.

See "The Low-Pass Filter" (📖 206, 208) for information on cleaning the low-pass filter.

**Lens contacts:** Keep the lens contacts clean.

**Do not touch the shutter curtain:** The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.





**Storage:** To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If the product will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.

To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting it away.

Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.

**Notes on the monitor:** The monitor may contain a few pixels that are always lit or that do not light. This is common to all TFT LCD monitors and does not indicate a malfunction. Images recorded with the product are unaffected.

Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.

Do not apply pressure to the monitor, as this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by wiping lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury from broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes and mouth.

Return the monitor to the storage position before transporting the camera or leaving it unattended.

**Batteries:** Dirt on the battery terminals can prevent the camera from functioning and should be removed with a soft, dry cloth before use.

Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries:

Turn the product off before replacing the battery.

The battery may become hot when used for extended periods. Observe due caution when handling the battery.

Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.

Do not expose the battery to flame or excessive heat.

After removing the battery from the camera, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Charge the battery before use. When taking photographs on important occasions, ready a spare EN-EL9a battery and keep it fully charged. Depending on your location, it may be difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice.

On cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.

Continuing to charge the battery after it is fully charged can impair battery performance.

Used batteries are a valuable resource. Please recycle used batteries in accord with local regulations.



# Available Settings

The following tables list the settings that can be adjusted in each mode.

## ■ Modes Available from the Mode Dial

	AUTO									P	S	A	M
Shooting menu	Set Picture Control	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Image quality <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Image size <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	White balance <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	ISO sensitivity settings <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Active D-Lighting <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Auto distortion control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Color space	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Long exp. NR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	High ISO NR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Active folder	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Movie settings	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Interval timer shooting	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Other settings	Release mode <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Focus mode <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	AE-L/AF-L button hold <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Flexible program <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	—	—
	Metering <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Exposure compensation <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Bracketing <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Flash mode <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	—	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Flash compensation <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a1: AF-area mode <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a2: Built-in AF-assist illuminator	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a3: Live view autofocus <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a4: Rangefinder	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Custom settings <sup>3</sup>	b1: EV steps for exposure cntrl.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	c1: Shutter-release button AE-L	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	c2: Auto off timers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	c3: Self-timer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	c4: Remote on duration	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	d1: Beep	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	d2: Viewfinder grid display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	d3: ISO display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	d4: File number sequence	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	d5: Exposure delay mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d6: Date imprint	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
d7: Live view display options	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

	AUTO									P	S	A	M
Custom settings <sup>3</sup>	e1: Flash cntrl for built-in flash	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	e2: Auto bracketing set	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
	f1: Assign /Fn button	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	f2: Assign AE-L/AF-L button	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	f3: Reverse dial rotation	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	f4: No memory card?	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	f5: Reverse indicators	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

1 Reset with two-button reset ( 78).

2 Reset with when mode dial is rotated to new setting.

3 Reset with Custom Setting (Reset Custom Settings).

## SCENE Modes

Shooting menu	Set Picture Control	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Image quality <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Image size <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	White balance	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ISO sensitivity settings <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Active D-Lighting	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Auto distortion control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Color space	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Long exp. NR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	High ISO NR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Active folder	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Movie settings	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Interval timer shooting	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Other settings	Release mode <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Focus mode <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	AE-L/AF-L button hold <sup>1</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Flexible program	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Metering	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Exposure compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Bracketing	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Flash mode <sup>1,2</sup>	—	✓	—	—	—	✓	—	—	✓	—	—	—
Custom settings <sup>3</sup>	Flash compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	a1: AF-area mode <sup>1,2</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a2: Built-in AF-assist illuminator	—	✓	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a3: Live view autofocus <sup>1,2</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	a4: Rangefinder	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
b1: EV steps for exposure cntrl.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

c1: Shutter-release button AE-L	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
c2: Auto off timers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
c3: Self-timer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
c4: Remote on duration	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d1: Beep	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d2: Viewfinder grid display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d3: ISO display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d4: File number sequence	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d5: Exposure delay mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d6: Date imprint	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
d7: Live view display options	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
e1: Flash cntrl for built-in flash	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
e2: Auto bracketing set	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
f1: Assign /Fn button	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
f2: Assign AE-L/AF-L button	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
f3: Reverse dial rotation	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
f4: No memory card?	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
f5: Reverse indicators	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Custom settings<sup>3</sup>

- 1 Reset with two-button reset ( 78).
- 2 Reset with when mode dial is rotated to new setting.
- 3 Reset with Custom Setting (**Reset Custom Settings**).



# Memory Card Capacity

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 4 GB SanDisk Extreme III 30MB/s Edition SDHC card at different image quality and size settings.

Image quality	Image size	File size <sup>1</sup>	No. of images <sup>1</sup>	Buffer capacity <sup>2</sup>
NEF + JPEG fine <sup>3</sup>	L	16.7 MB	180	7
	M	14.0 MB	210	7
	S	12.1 MB	238	7
NEF + JPEG normal <sup>3</sup>	L	13.4 MB	215	7
	M	12.3 MB	235	7
	S	11.3 MB	252	7
NEF + JPEG basic <sup>3</sup>	L	12.0 MB	238	7
	M	11.5 MB	250	7
	S	11.0 MB	259	7
NEF (RAW)	—	10.6 MB	268	11
JPEG fine	L	5.9 MB	549	63
	M	3.3 MB	969	100
	S	1.5 MB	2100	100
JPEG normal	L	3.0 MB	1000	100
	M	1.7 MB	1800	100
	S	0.8 MB	4100	100
JPEG basic	L	1.5 MB	2100	100
	M	0.9 MB	3600	100
	S	0.4 MB	7700	100

1 All figures are approximate. File size varies with scene recorded.

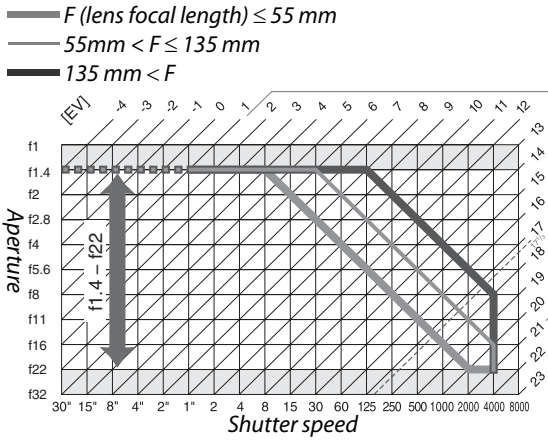
2 Maximum number of exposures that can be stored in memory buffer. Drops if ISO sensitivity is set to **Hi 0.3** or higher, **High ISO NR** is on when ISO sensitivity is set to 800 or higher, or long exposure noise reduction or auto distortion control (□ 150) is on.

3 Image size applies to JPEG images only. Size of NEF (RAW) images can not be changed. File size is the total for NEF (RAW) and JPEG images.



# Exposure Program

The exposure program for programmed auto is shown in the following graph:



The maximum and minimum values for EV vary with ISO sensitivity; the above graph assumes an ISO sensitivity of ISO 200 equivalent. When matrix metering is used, values over  $17\frac{1}{3}$  EV are reduced to  $17\frac{1}{3}$  EV.



# Troubleshooting

If the camera fails to function as expected, check the list of common problems below before consulting your retailer or Nikon representative.

## Display

**Viewfinder is out of focus:** Adjust viewfinder focus or use optional eyepiece correction lenses (☞ 25, 202).

**Viewfinder is dark:** Insert a fully-charged battery (☞ 16, 28).

**Displays turn off without warning:** Choose longer delays for Custom Setting c2 (**Auto off timers**, ☞ 157).

**Information display does not appear in monitor:** Shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If information display does not appear when you remove your finger from shutter-release button, confirm that **On** is selected for **Auto Information Display** (☞ 168) and that battery is charged.

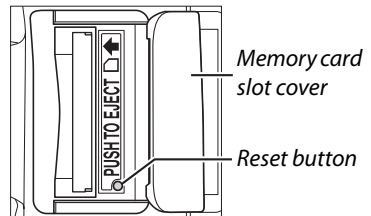
**Camera does not respond to controls:** See “A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras,” below.

**Viewfinder display is unresponsive and dim:** The response times and brightness of this display vary with temperature.

### **A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras**

In extremely rare instances, unusual characters may appear in the monitor and the camera may stop functioning. In most cases, this phenomenon is caused by a strong external static charge. Turn the camera off, remove and replace the battery, taking care to avoid burns, and turn the camera on again, or, if you are using an AC adapter (available separately), disconnect and reconnect the adapter and turn the camera on again.

If the problem persists, turn the camera off, open the memory card slot cover and, using a paper clip, press the reset button by the memory card slot (this also resets the camera clock). Note that disconnecting the power source or pressing the reset button may result in loss of any data not recorded to the memory card at the time the problem occurred. Data already recorded to the card will not be affected. In the event of continued malfunction, contact your retailer or Nikon-authorized service representative.



# Shooting (All Modes)

---

**Camera takes time to turn on:** Delete files or folders.

---

**Shutter-release disabled:**

- Memory card is locked, full, or not inserted (☐ 24, 29, 22).
  - Built-in flash is charging (☐ 32).
  - Camera is not in focus (☐ 31).
  - CPU lens with aperture ring attached but aperture not locked at highest f-number (☐ 194).
  - Non-CPU lens is attached but camera is not in mode **M** (☐ 195).
  - **Release locked** is selected for Custom Setting f4 (**No memory card?**, ☐ 164).
- 

**Final photo is larger than area shown in viewfinder:** Viewfinder horizontal and vertical frame coverage is approximately 95%.

---

**Photos are out of focus:**

- AF-S or AF-I lens is not attached: use AF-S or AF-I lens or focus manually.
  - Camera unable to focus using autofocus: use manual focus or focus lock (☐ 58, 60).
  - Camera is in manual focus mode: focus manually (☐ 60).
- 

**Focus does not lock when shutter-release button is pressed halfway:** Use **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock focus when **AF-C** focus mode is selected or when photographing moving subjects in **AF-A** mode.

---

**Can not select focus point:**

- Auto-area selected for AF-area mode: choose another mode (☐ 56).
  - Face priority or subject tracking AF selected in live view (☐ 43).
  - Press shutter-release button halfway to turn monitor off or activate exposure meters (☐ 29).
- 

**Can not select subject tracking autofocus mode:** Monochrome Picture Control selected (☐ 107).

---

**Can not select AF-area mode:** Manual focus selected (☐ 54).

---

**Image size can not be changed:** **Image quality** set to **NEF (RAW)** (☐ 63).

---






**Camera is slow to record photos:** Turn long exposure noise reduction off (☐ 151).

---

**Randomly-spaced bright pixels (“noise”) appear in photos:**

- Choose lower ISO sensitivity or turn high ISO noise reduction on (☐ 151).
  - Shutter speed is slower than 8 s: use long exposure noise reduction (☐ 151).
- 

**AF-assist illuminator does not light:**

- Camera is in , , , , or  mode: select another mode (☐ 33).
  - AF-assist lamp does not light for continuous-servo autofocus. Choose **AF-S**. In single-point, dynamic-area, or 3D-tracking AF, select center focus point (☐ 58).
  - **Off** selected for Custom Setting a2 (**Built-in AF-assist illuminator**, ☐ 155).
  - Illuminator has turned off automatically. Illuminator may become hot with continued use; wait for lamp to cool down.
- 

**No photo taken when remote control shutter-release button is pressed:**

- Replace battery in remote control (☐ 203).
- Choose remote control mode (☐ 65, 67).
- Flash is charging (☐ 32).
- Time selected for Custom Setting c4 (**Remote on duration**) has passed: reselect remote control mode (☐ 157).
- Bright light is interfering with remote.



---

**Smudges appear in photographs:** Clean front and rear lens elements. If problem persists, perform image sensor cleaning (☞ 206).

---

**Date is not imprinted on photographs:** NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG image quality option selected for image quality (☞ 62, 160).

---

**Menu item can not be selected:** Some options are not available in all modes.

---

## **Shooting (P, S, A, M)**

---

### **Shutter-release disabled:**

- Non-CPU lens is attached: rotate camera mode dial to **M** (☞ 195).
  - Mode dial rotated to **S** after shutter speed of “bulb” or “time” selected in mode **M**: choose new shutter speed (☞ 82).
- 

**Full range of shutter speeds not available:** Flash in use (☞ 72).

---

### **Colors are unnatural:**

- Adjust white balance to match light source (☞ 96).
  - Adjust **Set Picture Control** settings (☞ 106).
- 

**Can not measure white balance:** Subject is too dark or too bright (☞ 100).

---

**Image can not be selected as source for preset white balance:** Image was not created with D5000 (☞ 102).

---

**White balance bracketing unavailable:** NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG image quality option selected for image quality (☞ 63).

---

**Effects of Picture Control differ from image to image:** **A** (auto) is selected for sharpening, contrast, or saturation. For consistent results over a series of photos, choose another setting (☞ 109).

---

**Metering can not be changed:** Autoexposure lock is in effect (☞ 89).

---

**Exposure compensation can not be used:** Choose mode **P, S, or A** (☞ 90).

---

**Only one shot taken each time shutter-release button is pressed in continuous shooting mode:** Lower built-in flash (☞ 66).

---

**Reddish areas appear in photos or textures are uneven:** Reddish areas and uneven textures may appear in long time-exposures. Turn long exposure noise reduction on when shooting at shutter speeds of “bulb” or “time” (☞ 151).

---



# Playback

---

**Flashing areas, shooting data, or graphs appear on images:** Press ▲ or ▼ to choose photo information displayed, or change settings for **Display mode** (☞ 117, 146).

---

**NEF (RAW) image is not played back:** Photo was taken at image quality of NEF + JPEG (☞ 63).

---

**Some pictures are not displayed during playback:** Select **All** for **Playback folder**. Note that **Current** is automatically selected after photograph is taken (☞ 146).

---

**“Tall” (portrait) orientation photos are displayed in “wide” (landscape) orientation:**

- Select **On** for **Rotate tall** (☞ 147).
  - Photo was taken with **Off** selected for **Auto image rotation** (☞ 170).
  - Camera orientation was changed while shutter-release button was pressed in continuous release mode or camera was pointed up or down when photo was taken (☞ 66).
  - Photo is displayed in image review (☞ 147).
- 

**Can not delete picture:**

- Picture is protected: remove protection (☞ 125).
  - Memory card is locked (☞ 24).
- 

**Can not retouch picture:**

- Photo can not be further edited with D5000 (☞ 175).
  - Picture is a movie: movies can not be retouched (☞ 174).
- 

**Can not change print order:**

- Memory card is full: delete pictures (☞ 29).
  - Memory card is locked (☞ 24).
- 

**Can not select photo for printing:** Photo is in NEF (RAW) format. Create JPEG copy using **NEF (RAW) processing** or transfer to computer and print using supplied software or Capture NX 2 (☞ 134).

---

**Picture is not displayed on TV:** Choose correct video mode (☞ 168).

---

**Picture is not displayed on high-definition video device:** Confirm that HDMI cable (available separately) is connected (☞ 133).

---

**Can not transfer photos to computer:** OS not compatible with camera or transfer software. Use card reader to copy photos to computer (☞ 134).

---

**NEF (RAW) photos not displayed in Capture NX 2:** Update to latest version (☞ 202).

---

**Image Dust Off option in Capture NX 2 does not have desired effect:** Image sensor cleaning changes the position of dust on the low-pass filter. Dust off reference data recorded before image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken after image sensor cleaning is performed. Dust off reference data recorded after image sensor cleaning is performed can not be used with photographs taken before image sensor cleaning is performed (☞ 171).

---

# Miscellaneous

---

**Date of recording is not correct:** Set camera clock (☞ 21, 169).



**Menu item can not be selected:** Some options are not available at certain combinations of settings or when no memory card is inserted (☞ 15, 22, 174).



---

# Error Messages

This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder and monitor.

## Warning Icons


A flashing  in the monitor or  in the viewfinder indicates that a warning or error message can be displayed in the monitor by pressing the ? (Ⓜ) button.

Indicator		Solution	
Monitor	Viewfinder		
Lock lens aperture ring at minimum aperture (largest f/-number).	F E E (blinks)	Set lens aperture ring to minimum aperture (largest f-number).	19, 194
Lens not attached.	F - -/ ? (blinks)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attach non-IX NIKKOR lens.</li> <li>If non-CPU lens is attached, select mode M.</li> </ul>	18, 195
Shutter-release disabled. Recharge battery.	 (blinks)	Turn camera off and recharge or replace battery.	16, 17
This battery can not be used. Choose battery designated for use in this camera.		Use Nikon-approved battery (EN-EL9a).	202
Initialization error. Turn camera off and then on again.		Turn camera off, remove and replace battery, and then turn camera on again.	17, 28
Battery level is low. Complete operation and turn camera off immediately.	—	End cleaning and turn camera off and recharge or replace battery.	209
Clock not set.	—	Set camera clock.	21, 169
No memory card.	(- E -)	Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted.	22
Memory card is locked. Slide lock to “write” position.	E H R (blinks)	Memory card is locked (write protected). Slide card write-protect switch to “write” position.	24
This memory card cannot be used. Card may be damaged. Insert another card.	E H R (blinks)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use approved card.</li> <li>Format card. If problem persists, card may be damaged. Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.</li> </ul>	203, 23
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Error creating new folder. Delete files or insert new memory card.</li> <li>Insert new memory card.</li> </ul>	40, 126, 22
This card is not formatted. Format card?	F o r (blinks)	Format card or turn camera off and insert new memory card.	23
Card is full	F u l (blinks)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce quality or size.</li> <li>Delete photographs.</li> </ul>	62, 40, 126
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert new memory card.</li> </ul>	22



Indicator		Solution	📖
Monitor	Viewfinder		
—	● (blinks)	Camera can not focus using autofocus. Change composition or focus manually.	31, 55, 60
<b>Subject is too bright.</b>	H i	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a lower ISO sensitivity</li> <li>• Use commercial ND filter</li> <li>• In mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S Increase shutter speed</li> <li>A Choose a smaller aperture (larger f-number)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	74 — 82 83
<b>Subject is too dark.</b>	L a	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a higher ISO sensitivity</li> <li>• Use flash</li> <li>• In mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S Lower shutter speed</li> <li>A Choose a larger aperture (smaller f-number)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	74 70 82 83
<b>No Bulb in S mode.</b>	b u i b (blinks)	Change shutter speed or select manual exposure mode.	82, 84
	- - (blinks)		
<b>Interval timer shooting</b>	—	Menus and playback not available during interval timer shooting. To end interval timer shooting, turn camera off.	—
—	⚡ (blinks)	Flash has fired at full power. Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again.	—
<b>Flash is in TTL mode. Choose another setting or use a CPU lens.</b>		Change flash mode setting on optional flash unit or use CPU lens.	194
—	⚡/? (blinks)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the flash.</li> <li>• Change distance to subject, aperture, flash range, or ISO sensitivity.</li> <li>• Optional SB-400 flash unit attached: flash is in bounce position or focus distance is very short. Continue shooting; if necessary, increase focus distance to prevent shadows from appearing in photograph.</li> </ul>	70 73, 74, 83 —
<b>Flash error</b>		Error occurred updating firmware for optional flash unit. Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.	—
<b>Eye-Fi upload could not be disabled. The card is still transmitting and pictures may be uploaded.</b>	—	The Eye-Fi card is still transmitting data after <b>Disable</b> has been selected for <b>Eye-Fi upload</b> . To terminate wireless transmission, turn the camera off and remove the card.	173



Indicator		Solution	
Monitor	Viewfinder		
<b>Error. Press shutter release button again.</b>	<i>Err</i> (blinks)	Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult Nikon-authorized service representative.	—
<b>Start-up error. Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative.</b>		Consult Nikon-authorized service representative.	—
<b>Autoexposure error. Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative.</b>			
<b>Folder contains no images.</b>	—	Folder selected for playback contains no images. Insert another memory card or select a different folder.	22, 146
<b>File does not contain image data.</b>	—	File has been created or modified using a computer or different make of camera, or file is corrupt.	175
<b>Cannot select this file.</b>			
<b>No image for retouching.</b>	—	Memory card does not contain NEF (RAW) images for use with <b>NEF (RAW) processing</b> .	184
<b>Check printer.</b>	—	Check printer. To resume, select <b>Continue</b> (if available).	—*
<b>Check paper.</b>	—	Paper is not selected size. Insert paper of correct size and select <b>Continue</b> .	—*
<b>Paper jam.</b>	—	Clear jam and select <b>Continue</b> .	—*
<b>Out of paper.</b>	—	Insert paper of selected size and select <b>Continue</b> .	—*
<b>Check ink supply.</b>	—	Check ink. To resume, select <b>Continue</b> .	—*
<b>Out of ink.</b>	—	Replace ink and select <b>Continue</b> .	—*

\* See printer manual for more information.



# Specifications

## ■ Nikon D5000 Digital Camera

<b>Type</b>	
Type	Single-lens reflex digital camera
Lens mount	Nikon F mount (with AF contacts)
Effective picture angle	Approx. $1.5 \times$ lens focal length (Nikon DX format)
<b>Effective pixels</b>	
Effective pixels	12.3 million
<b>Image sensor</b>	
Image sensor	23.6 × 15.8 mm CMOS sensor
Total pixels	12.9 million
Dust-reduction System	Image sensor cleaning, Image Dust Off reference data (optional Capture NX 2 software required)
<b>Storage</b>	
Image size (pixels)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 4,288 × 2,848 (L)</li><li>• 2,144 × 1,424 (S)</li><li>• 3,216 × 2,136 (M)</li></ul>
File format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>NEF (RAW)</b></li><li>• <b>JPEG:</b> JPEG-Baseline compliant with fine (approx. 1 : 4), normal (approx. 1 : 8), or basic (approx. 1 : 16) compression</li><li>• <b>NEF (RAW)+JPEG:</b> Single photograph recorded in both NEF (RAW) and JPEG formats</li></ul>
Picture Control System	Can be selected from Standard, Neutral, Vivid, Monochrome, Portrait, Landscape; storage for additional custom Picture Controls
Media	SD (Secure Digital) memory cards, SDHC-compliant
File system	DCF (Design Rule for Camera File System) 2.0, DPOF (Digital Print Order Format), Exif 2.21 (Exchangeable Image File Format for Digital Still Cameras), PictBridge
<b>Viewfinder</b>	
Viewfinder	Eye-level pentamirror single-lens reflex viewfinder
Frame coverage	Approx. 95% horizontal and 95% vertical
Magnification	Approx. $0.78 \times$ (50 mm f/1.4 lens at infinity, $-1.0 \text{ m}^{-1}$ )
Eyepoint	17.9 mm ( $-1.0 \text{ m}^{-1}$ )
Diopter adjustment	$-1.7$ – $+0.7 \text{ m}^{-1}$
Focusing screen	Type B BriteView Clear Matte Mark V screen with focus frame (framing grid can be displayed)
Reflex mirror	Quick return
Lens aperture	Instant return, electronically controlled



Lens	
<b>Compatible lenses</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AF-S or AF-I:</b> All functions supported.</li> <li>• <b>Type G or D AF NIKKOR without built-in autofocus motor:</b> All functions except autofocus supported. IX NIKKOR lenses not supported.</li> <li>• <b>Other AF NIKKOR:</b> All functions supported except autofocus and 3D color matrix metering II. Lenses for F3AF not supported.</li> <li>• <b>Type D PC NIKKOR:</b> All functions supported except autofocus and some shooting modes.</li> <li>• <b>AI-P NIKKOR:</b> All functions supported except autofocus and 3D color matrix metering II.</li> <li>• <b>Non-CPU:</b> Autofocus not supported. Can be used in mode <b>M</b>, but exposure meter does not function.</li> </ul> <p>Electronic rangefinder can be used if lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.</p>
Shutter	
<b>Type</b>	Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter
<b>Speed</b>	$1/4000 - 30$ s in steps of $1/3$ or $1/2$ EV, bulb, time (requires optional ML-L3 wireless remote control)
<b>Flash sync speed</b>	$X=1/200$ s; synchronizes with shutter at $1/200$ s or slower
Release	
<b>Release mode</b>	(single frame),  (continuous),  (self-timer),  2s (delayed remote),  (quick response),  (quiet shutter-release)
<b>Frame advance rate</b>	Up to 4 fps (manual focus, mode <b>M</b> or <b>S</b> , shutter speed $1/250$ s or faster, and other settings at default values)
<b>Self-timer</b>	Can be selected from 2, 5, 10, and 20 s duration and from 1 to 9 shots
Exposure	
<b>Metering</b>	TTL exposure metering using 420-pixel RGB sensor
<b>Metering method</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Matrix:</b> 3D color matrix metering II (type G and D lenses); color matrix metering II (other CPU lenses)</li> <li>• <b>Center-weighted:</b> Weight of 75% given to 8-mm circle in center of frame</li> <li>• <b>Spot:</b> Meters 3.5-mm circle (about 2.5% of frame) centered on selected focus point</li> </ul>
<b>Range (ISO 100, f/1.4 lens, 20 °C/68 °F)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Matrix or center-weighted metering:</b> 0–20 EV</li> <li>• <b>Spot metering:</b> 2–20 EV</li> </ul>
<b>Exposure meter coupling</b>	CPU
<b>Mode</b>	Auto modes ( auto;  auto (flash off)); scene modes ( portrait;  landscape;  child;  sports;  close up;  night portrait;  night landscape;  party/indoor;  beach/snow;  sunset;  dusk/dawn;  pet portrait;  candlelight;  blossom;  autumn colors;  food;  silhouette;  high key;  low key); programmed auto with flexible program ( <b>P</b> ); shutter-priority auto ( <b>S</b> ); aperture-priority auto ( <b>A</b> ); manual ( <b>M</b> )
<b>Exposure compensation</b>	–5 – +5 EV in increments of $1/3$ or $1/2$ EV
<b>Exposure bracketing</b>	3 frames in steps of $1/3$ or $1/2$ EV



<b>Exposure</b>	
<b>White balance bracketing</b>	3 frames in steps of 1
<b>ADL bracketing</b>	2 frames
<b>Exposure lock</b>	Luminosity locked at detected value with <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button
<b>ISO sensitivity (Recommended Exposure Index)</b>	ISO 200 – 3200 in steps of $\frac{1}{3}$ EV. Can also be set to approx. 0.3, 0.7, or 1 EV (ISO 100 equivalent) below ISO 200 or to approx. 0.3, 0.7, or 1 EV (ISO 6400 equivalent) above ISO 3200.
<b>Active D-Lighting</b>	Can be selected from Auto, Extra high, High, Normal, Low, or Off
<b>Focus</b>	
<b>Autofocus</b>	Nikon Multi-CAM 1000 autofocus module with TTL phase detection, 11 focus points (including one cross-type sensor), and AF-assist illuminator (range approx. 0.5–3 m/1 ft. 8 in.–9 ft. 10 in.)
<b>Detection range</b>	–1 – +19 EV (ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F)
<b>Lens servo</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Autofocus (AF):</b> Instant single-servo AF (<b>AF-S</b>); continuous-servo AF (<b>AF-C</b>); auto AF-S/AF-C selection (<b>AF-A</b>); predictive focus tracking activated automatically according to subject status</li> <li>• <b>Manual focus (MF):</b> Electronic rangefinder can be used</li> </ul>
<b>Focus point</b>	Can be selected from 11 focus points
<b>AF-area mode</b>	Single point, dynamic area, auto-area, 3D-tracking (11 points)
<b>Focus lock</b>	Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button halfway (single-servo AF) or by pressing <b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button
<b>Flash</b>	
<b>Built-in flash</b>	Auto flash with auto pop-up <b>¶</b> , <b>P</b> , <b>S</b> , <b>A</b> , <b>M</b> : Manual pop-up with button release
<b>Guide Number (m/ft., at 20 °C/68 °F)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>At ISO 200:</b> Approx. 17/56, 18/59 with manual flash</li> <li>• <b>At ISO 100:</b> Approx. 12/39, 13/43 with manual flash</li> </ul>
<b>Flash control</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TTL:</b> i-TTL balanced fill-flash and standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR using 420-pixel RGB sensor are available with built-in flash and SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, or SB-400 (i-TTL balanced fill-flash is available when matrix or center-weighted metering is selected)</li> <li>• <b>Auto aperture:</b> Available with SB-900, SB-800 and CPU lens</li> <li>• <b>Non-TTL auto:</b> Supported flash units include SB-900, SB-800, SB-80DX, SB-28DX, SB-28, SB-27, and SB-22S</li> <li>• <b>Range-priority manual:</b> Available with SB-900 and SB-800</li> </ul>
<b>Flash mode</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•            Auto, auto with red-eye reduction, off; fill-flash and red-eye reduction available with optional flash units</li> <li>• : Auto slow sync, auto slow sync with red-eye reduction, off; slow sync and slow sync with red-eye reduction available with optional flash units</li> <li>• </li></ul>



Flash	
<b>Flash-ready indicator</b>	Lights when built-in flash or optional flash unit such as SB-900, SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-80DX, SB-28DX, or SB-50DX is fully charged; blinks for 3 s after flash is fired at full output
<b>Accessory shoe</b>	Standard ISO 518 hot-shoe contact with safety lock
<b>Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)</b>	Advanced Wireless Lighting supported with built-in flash, SB-900, SB-800, or SU-800 as commander; Flash Color Information Communication supported with built-in flash and all CLS-compatible flash units
<b>Sync terminal</b>	AS-15 sync terminal adapter (available separately)
White balance	
<b>White balance</b>	Auto (TTL white-balance with main image sensor and 420 segment RGB sensor); 12 manual modes with fine-tuning; preset white balance; white balance bracketing
Live view	
<b>AF modes</b>	Face priority, wide area, normal area, subject tracking
<b>Autofocus</b>	Contrast-detect AF anywhere in frame (camera selects focus point automatically when face-priority AF or subject tracking is selected)
Movie	
<b>Image size (pixels)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1,280 × 720/24 fps</li> <li>• 640 × 424/24 fps</li> <li>• 320 × 216/24 fps</li> </ul>
<b>File format</b>	AVI
<b>Compression</b>	Motion-JPEG
Monitor	
<b>Monitor</b>	2.7-in., approx. 230k-dot, vari-angle TFT LCD, with 100% frame coverage and brightness adjustment
Playback	
<b>Playback</b>	Full-frame and thumbnail (4, 9, or 72 images or calendar) playback with playback zoom, movie playback, stop-motion movie playback, slide show, histogram display, highlights, auto image rotation, and image comment (up to 36 characters)
Interface	
<b>USB</b>	Hi-Speed USB
<b>Video output</b>	Can be selected from NTSC and PAL; images can be displayed on external device while camera monitor is on
<b>HDMI output</b>	Type C HDMI connector; camera monitor turns off when HDMI cable is connected.
<b>Accessory terminal</b>	<b>Remote cord:</b> MC-DC2 (available separately) <b>GPS unit:</b> GP-1 (available separately)
Supported languages	
<b>Supported languages</b>	Chinese (Simplified and Traditional), Danish, Dutch, English, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish



<b>Power source</b>	
<b>Battery</b>	One rechargeable Li-ion EN-EL9a battery
<b>AC adapter</b>	EH-5a AC adapter; requires EP-5 power connector (available separately)

<b>Tripod socket</b>	
<b>Tripod socket</b>	1/4 in. (ISO 1222)

<b>Dimensions/weight</b>	
<b>Dimensions (W × H × D)</b>	Approx. 127 × 104 × 80 mm (5.0 × 4.1 × 3.1 in.)
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 560 g (1 lb. 3.8 oz.) without battery, memory card, or body cap

<b>Operating environment</b>	
<b>Temperature</b>	0–40 °C (+32–104 °F)
<b>Humidity</b>	Less than 85% (no condensation)

- Unless otherwise stated, all figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery operating at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.

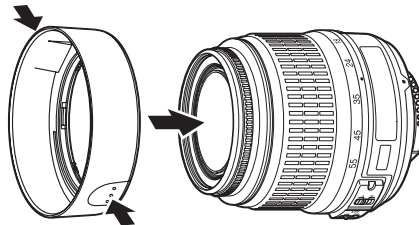
<b>MH-23 quick charger</b>	
<b>Rated input</b>	AC 100–240 V (50/60 Hz)
<b>Rated output</b>	DC 8.4 V/900 mA
<b>Supported batteries</b>	Nikon EN-EL9a or EN-EL9 rechargeable Li-ion battery
<b>Charging time</b>	Approx. 1 hour and 40 minutes (EN-E9a) or 1 hour and 30 minutes (EN-EL9) when battery is fully discharged
<b>Operating temperature</b>	0–40 °C (+32–104 °F)
<b>Dimensions (W × H × D)</b>	Approx. 82.5 × 28 × 65mm (3.2 × 1.1 × 2.6 in.)
<b>Length of cord</b>	Approx. 1800 mm (5 ft. 11 in.)
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 80 g (2.8 oz.), excluding power cable

<b>EN-EL9a rechargeable Li-ion battery</b>	
<b>Type</b>	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
<b>Rated capacity</b>	7.2 V/1080 mAh
<b>Dimensions (W × H × D)</b>	Approx. 36 × 14 × 56 mm (1.4 × 0.6 × 2.2 in.)
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 51 g (1.8 oz.), excluding terminal cover



**AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens**

<b>Type</b>	G-type AF-S DX Zoom-NIKKOR lens with built-in CPU and Nikon bayonet mount
<b>Supported cameras</b>	Nikon digital SLR cameras (DX format)
<b>Focal length</b>	18–55 mm
<b>Maximum aperture</b>	f/3.5–5.6
<b>Construction</b>	11 elements in 8 groups (including 1 aspherical element)
<b>Picture angle</b>	76°–28° 50′
<b>Focal length scale (mm)</b>	18, 24, 35, 45, 55
<b>Distance information</b>	Output to camera
<b>Zoom control</b>	Zoom adjusted by rotating separate zoom ring
<b>Focusing</b>	Autofocus with Silent Wave Motor; manual focus
<b>Vibration reduction</b>	Lens-shift method using voice coil motors (VCMs)
<b>Closest focus distance</b>	0.28 m (11 in.) from focal plane mark (□ 61) at all zoom settings
<b>Diaphragm</b>	Seven-blade diaphragm with rounded blades and fully automatic aperture
<b>Aperture range</b>	f/3.5–22 at 18 mm; f/5.6–36 at 55 mm
<b>Metering</b>	Maximum aperture
<b>Attachment size</b>	52 mm (P=0.75 mm)
<b>Dimensions</b>	Approx. 73 mm diameter × 79.5 mm/2.9 × 3.1 in. (from surface of bayonet mount to end of lens)
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 265 g (9.3 oz.)
<b>Lens hood</b>	HB-45 (available separately; attaches as shown below)



Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.



## ■ ■ **Supported Standards**

- **DCF Version 2.0:** The Design Rule for Camera File Systems (DCF) is a standard widely used in the digital camera industry to ensure compatibility among different makes of camera.
- **DPOF:** Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is an industry-wide standard that allows pictures to be printed from print orders stored on the memory card.
- **Exif version 2.21:** The D5000 supports Exif (Exchangeable Image File Format for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.21, a standard in which information stored with photographs is used for optimal color reproduction when the images are output on Exif-compliant printers.
- **PictBridge:** A standard developed through cooperation with the digital camera and printer industries, allowing photographs to be output directly to a printer without first transferring them to a computer.
- **HDMI: High-Definition Multimedia Interface** is a standard for multimedia interfaces used in consumer electronics and AV devices capable of transmitting audiovisual data and control signals to HDMI-compliant devices via a single cable connection.

### **Trademark Information**

Macintosh, Mac OS, and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks, or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. The SD logo is a trademark of the SD Card Association. PictBridge and the SDHC logo are trademarks. HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC. All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.



# Battery Life

The number of shots that can be taken with fully-charged batteries varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, and how the camera is used. Sample figures for EN-EL9a (1080 mAh) batteries are given below.

- **Single-frame release mode (CIPA standard <sup>1</sup>):** Approximately 510 shots
- **Continuous release mode (Nikon standard <sup>2</sup>):** Approximately 2900 shots
  - 1 Measured at 23 °C/73.4 °F (±2 °C/3.6 °F) with an AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens under the following test conditions: lens cycled from infinity to minimum range and one photograph taken at default settings once every 30 s; after photograph is taken, monitor is turned on for 4 s; tester waits for exposure meters to turn off after monitor is turned off; flash fired at full power once every other shot. Live view not used.
  - 2 Measured at 20 °C/68 °F with an AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–55 mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens under the following test conditions: continuous release mode, focus mode set to **AF-C**, image quality set to JPEG basic, image size set to **M** (medium), white balance set to **AUTO**, ISO sensitivity set to ISO 200, shutter speed <sup>1</sup>/<sub>250</sub> s, focus cycled from infinity to minimum range three times after shutter-release button has been pressed halfway for 3 s; six shots are then taken in succession and monitor turned on for 4 s and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

The following can reduce battery life:

- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds
- Using a GP-1 GPS unit
- Using VR (vibration reduction) mode with VR lenses

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL9a batteries:

- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soiled contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.



# Index

## Symbols

(Auto mode).....	28
(Auto (flash off) mode) .....	28
(Portrait) .....	34
(Landscape) .....	34
(Child).....	34
(Sports).....	34
(Close up) .....	35
(Night portrait).....	35
(Night landscape).....	35
(Party/indoor).....	35
(Beach/snow).....	36
(Sunset).....	36
(Dusk/dawn) .....	36
(Pet portrait) .....	36
(Candlelight).....	37
(Blossom).....	37
(Autumn colors) .....	37
(Food).....	37
(Silhouette).....	38
(High key).....	38
(Low key).....	38
<b>P</b> (Programmed auto).....	81
<b>S</b> (Shutter-priority auto).....	82
<b>A</b> (Aperture-priority auto).....	83
<b>M</b> (Manual) .....	84
(flexible program) .....	81
(Live view).....	42, 50
<b>WB</b> (White balance).....	96
<b>PRE</b> (Preset manual) .....	99
(Single frame) .....	65
(Continuous) .....	65
(Self-timer).....	65, 67, 157
(Delayed remote) .....	65, 67
(Quick-response remote) ..	65, 67
(Quiet shutter-release) .....	65
(Matrix) .....	88
(Center-weighted) .....	88
(Spot).....	88
(AE bracketing).....	103
(White balance bracketing).....	103
<b>ADL-BKT</b> (ADL bracketing).....	103
(Flash compensation) .....	92
(Exposure compensation) .....	90
(Information) button.....	8
(Information edit) button.....	9
(Help).....	13
(focus indicator).....	31, 58, 61
(flash-ready indicator).....	32
(“Beep” indicator).....	158
+ NEF (RAW).....	163

## Numerics

3D color matrix metering II.....	88
3D-tracking .....	57
3D-tracking (11 points) (AF-area mode) .....	57
420-pixel RGB sensor .....	88

## A

A/V cable .....	132
AC adapter.....	202, 204
Accessories.....	202
Active D-Lighting .....	94, 103, 163
Active D-Lighting bracketing ..	103, 163
Active folder .....	152
Add items (MY MENU).....	191
ADL bracketing .....	103, 163
Adobe RGB .....	150
AE bracketing (Auto bracketing set) .....	103
AE-L .....	89, 164
<b>AE-L/AF-L</b> button.....	59, 89, 164
AF .....	54–59
AF assist .....	31, 55, 155, 197
AF-area mode.....	56, 155
A-M switch.....	18, 60
Amber.....	98, 179
Aperture .....	80, 83
Aperture-priority auto.....	83
Assign AE-L/AF-L button .....	164
Assign /Fn button .....	163
Attaching the lens.....	18
Audio video cable .....	132
Auto (White balance).....	96
Auto bracketing set.....	103, 162
Auto dim.....	166
Auto distortion control .....	150
Auto image rotation.....	170
Auto information display .....	168
Auto meter off.....	29, 157
Auto off timers .....	157
Auto-area (AF-area mode) .....	57
Autofocus.....	54–59
Auto-servo AF.....	54
Available Settings .....	212

## B

Battery.....	16, 17, 28
Beep .....	158
Black-and-white.....	178
Blue .....	98, 179
Blue intensifier (Filter effects) ..	178
Body cap.....	3, 18, 202

Border (PictBridge).....	138, 141
Bracketing.....	103, 162, 163
Built-in AF-assist illuminator.....	155
Bulb .....	86
Burst.....	66

## C

Calendar .....	123
Calendar playback.....	123
Camera Control Pro 2.....	134, 202
Center-weighted .....	88
Charging a battery.....	16
Clean image sensor .....	206
Clock .....	20, 169
Clock battery.....	21
Cloudy (White balance) .....	96
CLS.....	198
Color balance.....	179
Color outline .....	186
Color space .....	150
Color temperature .....	97
Compatible lens.....	194
Computer.....	134
Connecting a GPS to the camera... 114	
Continuous (Release mode).....	65
Continuous-servo AF .....	54
CPU contacts.....	194
CPU lens.....	19, 194
Creative Lighting System .....	198
Cross screen (Filter effects) .....	178
Custom Settings .....	153
Cyanotype.....	178

## D

Date and time.....	20, 169
Date counter .....	160, 161
Date format .....	20, 169
Date imprint.....	160
Daylight saving time.....	20, 169
DCF version 2.0 .....	150, 230
Default settings .....	78, 154
Delayed remote (Release mode).... 65, 67	
Delete .....	40, 126
Delete all images.....	127
Delete current image.....	40, 126
Delete selected images.....	127
Digital Print Order Format.....	136, 139, 143, 230
Diopter adjustment control .....	25, 202
Direct sunlight (White balance) 96	
Display mode.....	146

Distortion control ..... 185  
D-Lighting ..... 176  
DPOF ..... 136, 139, 143, 230  
Dynamic area ..... 57

## E

EV steps for exposure cntl. .... 156  
Exif version 2.21 ..... 150, 230  
Exposure ..... 80, 89, 90  
Exposure bracketing ..... 103, 162  
Exposure compensation ..... 90  
Exposure delay mode ..... 159  
Exposure indicator ..... 85  
Exposure lock ..... 89  
Exposure meters ..... 29, 157  
Exposure mode ..... 80  
Exposure program ..... 216

## F

Face priority ..... 43  
File information ..... 117  
File number sequence ..... 159  
Filter effects ..... 109, 178  
Fine-Tuning White Balance ..... 98  
Firmware version ..... 173  
Fisheye ..... 185  
Flash ..... 32, 70, 71, 198  
Flash (White balance) ..... 96  
Flash cntl for built-in flash ..... 162  
Flash compensation ..... 92  
Flash control ..... 162  
Flash mode ..... 71  
Flash range ..... 73  
Flash ready indicator ..... 32, 200  
Flash sync speed ..... 225  
Flexible program ..... 81  
Fluorescent (White balance) ..... 96  
Fn button ..... 163  
f-number ..... 83, 194  
Focal length ..... 197  
Focal length scale ..... 18  
Focal plane mark ..... 61  
Focus ..... 54–61  
Focus indicator ..... 31, 58, 61  
Focus lock ..... 58  
Focus mode ..... 54  
Focus point ..... 30, 54, 58, 61  
Focus tracking ..... 57  
Focusing screen ..... 224  
Focusing the viewfinder ..... 25  
Focus-mode switch ..... 18, 60  
Format ..... 23  
Format memory card ..... 23  
Frame interval (Slide show) ..... 129  
Front-curtain sync ..... 72  
Full-frame playback ..... 116

## G

GPS ..... 114, 121  
GPS data ..... 121  
Green ..... 98, 179  
Green intensifier (Filter effects) ..... 178

## H

HDMI ..... 133, 168, 230  
Help ..... 13  
Hi (Sensitivity) ..... 74, 75  
High Definition ..... 133, 168, 230  
High ISO NR ..... 151  
Highlights ..... 119, 146  
Histogram ..... 118, 146

## I

Image comment ..... 169  
Image Dust Off ref photo ..... 171  
Image overlay ..... 182  
Image quality ..... 62  
Image review ..... 147  
Image size ..... 64  
Incandescent (White balance) .. 96  
Index print ..... 142  
Info display format ..... 166  
Info wrap-around ..... 168  
In-focus indicator ..... 31, 58, 61  
Information ..... 8, 117, 166  
Interval timer shooting ..... 76  
ISO display ..... 158  
ISO sensitivity ..... 74, 149  
ISO sensitivity auto control ..... 149  
ISO sensitivity settings ..... 149  
i-TTL ..... 162  
i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR ..... 162

## J

JPEG ..... 62  
JPEG basic ..... 62  
JPEG fine ..... 62  
JPEG normal ..... 62

## L

L (Image size) ..... 64  
Landscape (Set Picture Control) ..... 107  
Language ..... 20, 169  
Large ..... 64  
LCD ..... 166  
LCD brightness ..... 166  
Lens ..... 18, 19, 194  
Lens cap ..... 18  
Lens focus ring ..... 18

Lens mount ..... 3, 18, 61  
Lens VR switch ..... 18  
Live view ..... 41, 49, 155  
Live view autofocus ..... 155  
Live view display options ..... 161  
Lo (Sensitivity) ..... 74, 75  
Lock mirror up for cleaning ..... 208  
Long exp. NR ..... 151  
Long time-exposure with remote control ..... 86

## M

M (Image size) ..... 64  
Magenta ..... 98, 179  
Manage Picture Control ..... 111  
Manual ..... 60, 84  
Manual focus ..... 47, 60  
Matrix ..... 88  
Maximum aperture ..... 61  
Maximum sensitivity ..... 149  
Medium ..... 64  
Memory buffer ..... 31, 66  
Memory card ..... 22, 203, 215  
Memory card capacity ..... 215  
Metering ..... 88  
Minimum aperture ..... 19, 80  
Minimum shutter speed ..... 149  
Mirror ..... 3, 208  
Monitor ..... 7, 42, 116, 166  
Monochrome (Filter effects) ..... 178  
Monochrome (Set Picture Control) 107  
Mounting index ..... 18  
Movie settings ..... 51  
Movies ..... 50  
MY MENU ..... 190

## N

NEF ..... 62  
NEF (RAW) ..... 62, 134, 184  
NEF (RAW) processing ..... 184  
Neutral (Set Picture Control) ... 107  
Nikon Transfer ..... 134, 135  
No memory card? ..... 164  
Noise reduction ..... 151  
Non-CPU lens ..... 195  
Normal area ..... 43  
Number of shots ..... 157

## O

Optional flash ..... 162  
Overview data ..... 121

## P

Page size (PictBridge) ..... 137, 141  
Perspective control ..... 186

Photo info .....	117, 146
PictBridge.....	136, 230
Picture angle.....	197
Picture Controls .....	106, 108
Playback .....	39, 116
Playback folder.....	146
Playback information.....	117, 146
Playback menu.....	146
Playback zoom.....	124
Portrait (Set Picture Control) ....	107
Preset manual (White balance) 96,	99
Press the shutter-release button	
all the way down .....	32
Press the shutter-release button	
halfway.....	31, 32
Print (DPOF).....	139
Print select .....	139
Print set (DPOF).....	143
Printing .....	136
Programmed auto.....	81
Protecting photographs .....	125

## Q

Quality (Movie settings).....	51
Quick retouch.....	185
Quick-response remote (Release	
mode) .....	65
Quiet shutter-release (Release	
mode).....	65

## R

Rangefinder .....	156
Rank items (MY MENU) .....	192
Rear lens cap.....	18
Rear-curtain sync .....	72
Recent settings .....	190
Red intensifier (Filter effects) ...	178
Red-eye correction .....	176
Red-eye reduction .....	72
Release mode .....	65
Remote Control.....	67, 86, 203
Remote cord .....	86, 203
Remote on duration.....	157
Remove items (MY MENU) .....	191
Removing the lens from the	
camera.....	19
Reset .....	78, 154
Reset custom settings .....	154
Restoring default settings..	78, 154
Retouch menu.....	174
Reverse dial rotation .....	164
Reverse indicators.....	164
RGB .....	118, 150
RGB Histogram.....	118
Rotate tall.....	147

## S

S (Image size).....	64
Self-timer.....	65, 67, 157
Self-timer delay.....	157
Sensitivity.....	74, 149
Sepia .....	178
Set Picture Control.....	108
Setup menu.....	165
Shade (White balance).....	96
Shooting data.....	119, 120
Shooting menu .....	148
Shutter-priority auto.....	82
Shutter-release button..	32, 58, 89,
156	
Shutter-release button AE-L.....	156
Side-by-side comparison .....	189
Single point (AF-area mode).....	57
Single-frame (Release mode).....	65
Single-servo AF .....	54
Size .....	51, 64
Skylight (Filter effects).....	178
Slide show.....	129
Slow sync .....	72
Small .....	64
Small picture.....	180
Soft (Filter effects) .....	179
Sound (Movie settings) .....	51
Speedlight .....	198
Spot .....	88
sRGB.....	150
Standard (Set Picture Control). 107	
Standard i-TTL fill-flash for digital	
SLR .....	162
Start printing (PictBridge) 138, 141	
Stop-motion movie .....	187
Straighten .....	185
Subject tracking .....	43

## T

Television .....	132
Thumbnail playback .....	122
Time .....	86
Time stamp (PictBridge) ..	138, 141
Time zone.....	20, 169
Time zone and date.....	20, 169
Timer.....	67
Toning .....	109, 110
Trim .....	177
Two-button reset .....	78
Type D lens .....	194
Type G lens .....	194

## U

USB .....	135, 136
USB cable .....	135, 136

UTC .....	20, 114, 121
-----------	--------------

## V

Vibration Reduction .....	19
Video mode.....	168
Viewfinder.....	6, 25, 67, 224
Viewfinder eyepiece.....	67, 77
Viewfinder eyepiece cap .....	67, 77
Viewfinder grid display .....	158
ViewNX.....	134
Vivid (Set Picture Control) .....	107

## W

Warm filter (Filter effects) .....	178
WB.....	96, 103
WB bracketing.....	103
White balance.....	96
White balance bracketing .....	103
Wide area .....	43









# **Nikon**

No reproduction in any form of this manual, in whole or in part (except for brief quotation in critical articles or reviews), may be made without written authorization from NIKON CORPORATION.

**NIKON CORPORATION**  
Fuji Bldg., 2-3 Marunouchi 3-chome,  
Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-8331, Japan

© 2009 Nikon Corporation



Printed in Thailand  
6MB04911-01